HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 5008

PEUGEOT

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

Find your handbook on the PEUGEOT website, under "MyPEUGEOT".

This personal space offers advice and other useful information for the care and maintenance of your vehicle.

Flash this code for direct access to your handbook.

If the "MyPEUGEOT" function is not available on the PEUGEOT public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a 5008, a symbol of confidence, passion and inspiration

This handbook has been designed to enable you to make the most of your 5008 in all circumstances and in complete safety.
Take the time to read through it to familiarise yourself with the vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations of equipment available across the whole 5008 range.
Your vehicle will be fitted with just some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and images are given as an indication only.
Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specification, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of sale of the vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by PEUGEOT may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the new vehicle warranty.

Key

Warning:

this symbol is for warnings that you must observe for your own safety, the safety of others, and to avoid the risk of damage to your vehicle.

Information:

this symbol draws your attention to additional information for the best use of your vehicle.

Protection of the environment:

this symbol accompanies advice related to the protection of the environment.

Overview

Eco-driving

Monitoring 1

Instrument panels 14
Indicator and warning lamps 17
Indicators 28
Adjustment buttons 32
Screen A without audio equipment 33
Screen A with audio equipment 35
Screen C (PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5)) 37
16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)) 40
16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)) 42
Trip computer 45

Access 2

Remote control key 49
Alarm 54
Electric windows 56
Doors 58
Boot 61

Comfort 3

Heating and Ventilation 63
Manual air conditioning 65
Rear screen demist - defrost 67
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 68
Front seats 71
Rear seats, 2nd row 77
Access to the 3rd row 79
Rear seats, 3rd row 80
Seat modularity 82
Mirrors 83
Steering wheel adjustment 85

Visibility 4

Lighting controls 86
Daytime running lamps 90
Automatic illumination of headlamps 92
Headlamp adjustment 93
Directional lighting 94
Wiper controls 95
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 98
Courtesy lamps 100
Interior mood lighting 101

Fittings 5

Interior fittings 103
Centre console 105
Rear multimedia 108
Panoramic sunroof 110
Boot fittings 5 seat version 112
Boot fittings 7 seat version 113

Child safety 6

Child seats 119
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 121
ISOFIX mountings 131
Child lock 138

Safety 7

Direction indicators 139
Hazard warning lamps 139
Horn 139
ESC system 140
Front seat belts 143
Airbags 147

Driving 8

Starting-switching off the engine 151
Electric parking brake 154
Hill start assist 158
Head-up display 161
Distance alert 163
Speed limiter 166
Cruise control 169
Manual gearbox 172
Electronic gearbox 173
Automatic gearbox 178
Gear shift indicator 182
Stop & Start 183
Tyre under-inflation detection 186
Parking sensors 188
Reversing camera 190
Parking space sensors 191

Checks 9

Fuel tank 194
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 197
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 198
Opening the bonnet 199
Underbonnet - petrol engines 200
Underbonnet - Diesel engines 201
Checking levels 202
Checks 205
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (Blue HDi Diesel) 207

Practical information 10

Tool kit 215
Temporary puncture repair kit 217
Changing a wheel 226
Snow chains 232
Changing a bulb 233
Changing a fuse 239
12 V battery 246
Energy economy mode 249
Changing a wiper blade 250
Towing the vehicle 250
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 252
Towing a trailer 254
Fitting roof bars 256
Very cold climate screen 257
Accessories 258

Technical data 11

Petrol engines 260
Petrol weights 261
Diesel engines 262
Diesel weights 264
Dimensions 268
Identification markings 269

Audio equipment and telematics

Emergency or assistance 271
PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 275
PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) 319
PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) 375

Alphabetical index

Exterior



Remote control key 49-53, 151-153
- opening / closing
- battery
- anti-theft protection
- starting

Wiper 95-99
Changing a wiper blade 99, 250
Demisting-defrosting the rear screen 67

Boot 61-62
- opening / closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit 217-225
Changing a wheel 226-231
- tools
- removing

Fuel tank 194-196
Misfuel prevention 197

Parking sensors 188-189
Reversing camera 190
Parking space sensors 191-192
Towball (quickly detachable) 252-253
Towing 250-251
Towbar 254-255

Accessories 258-259
Roof bars, finishers 256
Panoramic sunroof 110-111



Changing rear bulbs 236-238
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps
- foglamps

Door mirrors 83

Exterior welcome lighting 91
Door mirror spotlamps 101
Exterior (lighting, automatic, directional) 92-94
Headlamp height adjustment 93
Changing bulbs 233-235
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Very cold climate screen 257

ESC: ABS, EBFD, EBA, ASR, DSC 140-142
CTI (traction on snow) 140
Tyre under-inflation detection 186-187
Tyre pressures 186, 222, 269
Snow chains 232

Doors 58-60
- opening / closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm 54-55
Electric windows 56-57

Interior

Boot fittings 112-117
- load space roller cover
- high load retaining net
- luggage retaining net
- hooks
- 12 V accessory socket
- storage box

Boot lamp, torch 102, 118

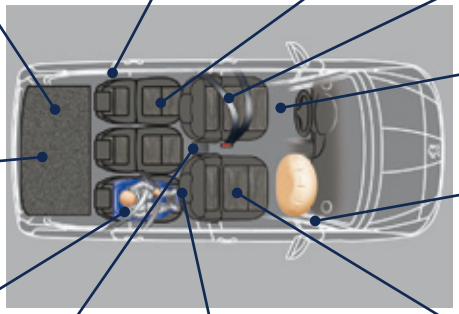
Temporary puncture repair kit 217-225
Spare wheel 226-229
Tool kit 215-216
Access to the AdBlue® tank 212-214

Rear seats, 2nd row 77-78
Rigid panel 79
Access to the 3rd row 79
Rear seats, 3rd row 80-81



Rear multimedia 108-109

Side blinds 118



Aircraft style table 107
Storage compartments under the footwells 107

Conventional child seats 119-130
ISOFIX child seats 131-137
Child lock 138

Seat belts 142-146

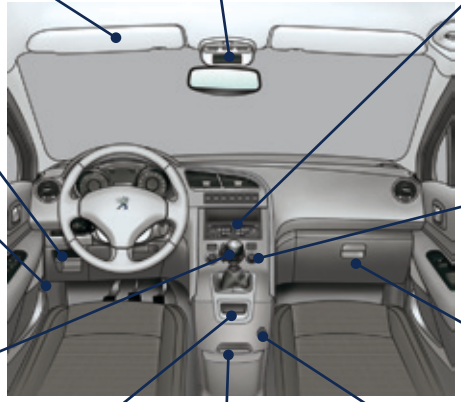
Mats 106
Storage drawer 107

Airbags 147-150
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 121, 148

Front seats 71-74
- manual
- electric
- head restraints
- lumbar
- heated

Seat in table position, transporting long objects 75

Instruments and controls



Courtesy lamps 100, 101
Seat belt / passenger's front airbag warning lamps display 144-145, 148
Rear view mirror 84

Sun visor 104

Dashboard fuses 240-242

Opening the bonnet 199

6-speed manual gearbox 172
Gear shift indicator 182
Electronic gear control gearbox 173-177
Automatic gearbox 178-181
Stop & Start 183-185
Hill start assist 158
Eco-driving 12-13

Electric parking brake 154-157, 161-162

PEUGEOT Connect Media navigation (RT6) 275-318
Setting the date/time 43

PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) 319-374
Setting the date/time 41

PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) 375-395
Setting the date/time 39

Ventilation 63-64
Rear ventilation 64
Manual air conditioning 65-66
Digital air conditioning 68-70
Demisting-defrosting the rear screen 67

Interior fittings 103-104, 106
- sun visor
- driver's storage compartments
- glove box
- mat

12 V accessory socket 106

Centre console 105
PEUGEOT Connect USB 105, 298, 356, 382

Instruments and controls

Instrument panels, screens 14-16
Warning lamps 17-27
Indicators 28-31
Gear shift indicator 182
Buttons 30, 32
- check / service indicator / trip distance recorder
- lighting dimmer

Head-up display 161-162
Distance alert 163-165

Lighting controls 86-92
Direction indicators 139

Speed limiter 166-168
Cruise control 169-171

Switch panel 8-10
Stop & Start 183-185

Door mirrors 83
Electric windows, deactivating 56-57

PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) instrument panel navigator 15
Adjusting headlamps 93

Multifunction screens 33-43
- Screen A
- Screen C
- 16/9 colour screen

Retractable screen 44
Screen A (setting the date/time) 33-36
Emergency or assistance call 271-274

Centre switch panel 8-10
Hazard warning lamps 139
Head-up display 161-162
Distance alert 163-165

Wiper controls 95-99
Trip computer 46-48

Ignition switch 151-153

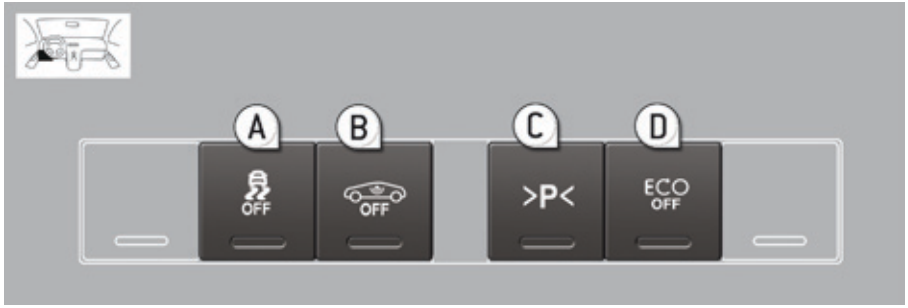
Panoramic sunroof 110-111

Steering wheel adjustment 85
Horn 139



Switch panel

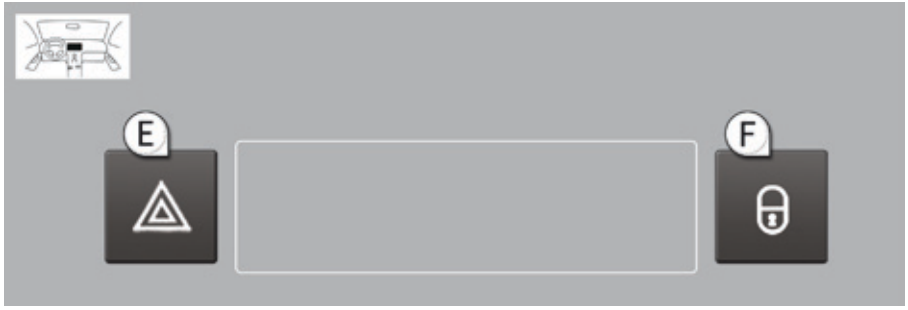
Version 1



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

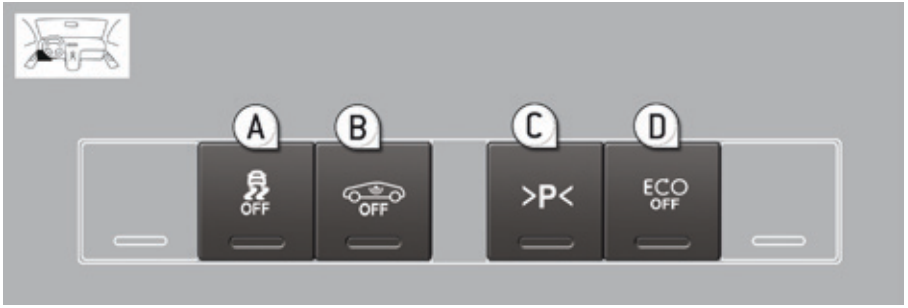
A.	ASR/DSC OFF.	140-142
B.	Volumetric alarm.	54-55
C.	Parking space measurement.	191-192
D.	Stop & Start.	183-185



Centre

E.	Hazard warning lamps.	139
F.	Central locking.	59-60

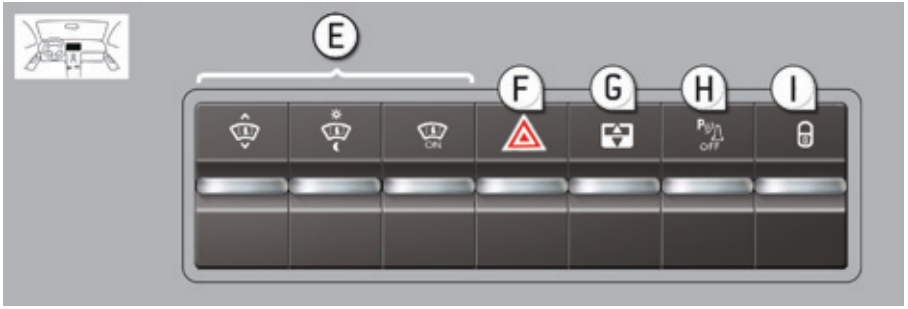
Version 2



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

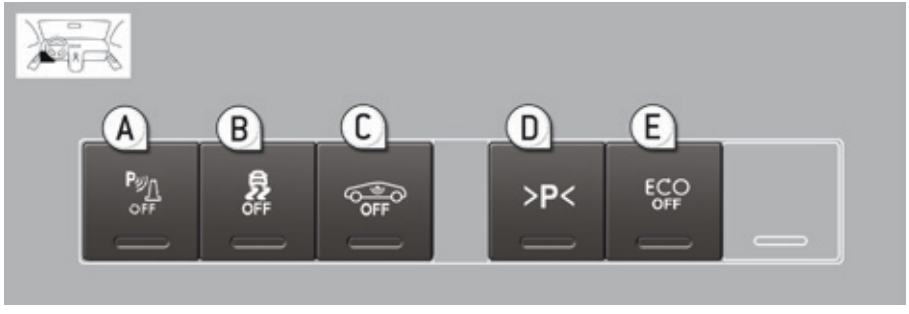
A.	ASR/DSC OFF.	140-142
B.	Volumetric alarm.	54-55
C.	Parking space measurement.	191-192
D.	Stop & Start.	183-185



Centre

E.	Head-up display.	161-162
F.	Hazard warning lamps.	139
G.	Blind.	110-111
H.	Visual and audible parking assistance.	188-189
I.	Central locking.	59-60

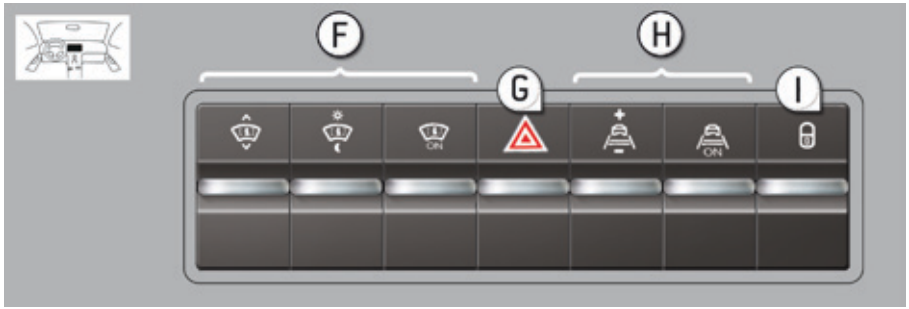
Version 3



Side

The illumination of the indicator lamp shows the state of the corresponding function.

A.	Visual and audible parking assistance.	188-189
B.	ASR/DSC OFF.	140-142
C.	Volumetric alarm.	54-55
D.	parking space measurement.	191-192
E.	Stop & Start.	183-185



Centre

F.	Head-up display.	161-162
G.	Hazard warning lamps.	139
H.	Distance alert.	163-165
I.	Central locking.	59-60

Maintenance - Technical data

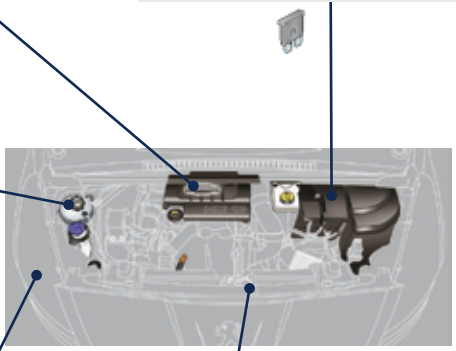
AdBlue® and SCR system 207-214
Running out of fuel, Diesel 198

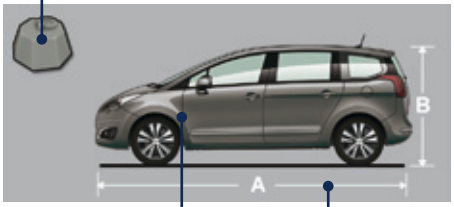
Checking levels 202-204
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

Checking components 205-206
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- brake pads / discs

Changing bulbs 233-238
- front
- rear

12 V battery 246-248
Load reduction, economy mode 249
Engine compartment fuses 239, 243-245





Petrol weights 261
Diesel weights 264-266
Diesel weights - LCV 267

Identification markings 269

Opening the bonnet 199
Under the bonnet, petrol 200
Under the bonnet, Diesel 201
Petrol engines 260
Diesel engines 262-263

Dimensions 268

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the personalised service plan for your vehicle.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Instrument panels

Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.



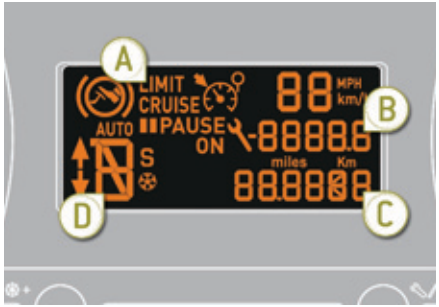


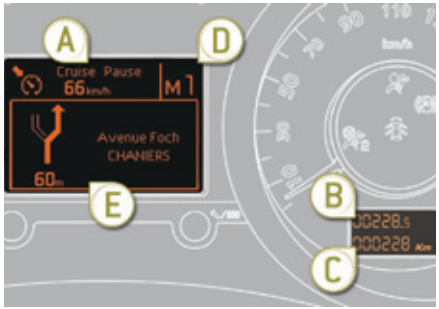
Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the engine speed (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Speedometer.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Screen.**
6. **Control switch**.
   Temporary display of the service indicator and driving range with the AdBlue® additive.
   Display and reset the selected function (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
7. **Instrument panel lighting dimmer.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls, if the vehicle lighting is on.

For more information, refer to the section corresponding to the button or function and its associated display.

Screen(s)





A. Speed limiter
or
Cruise control.
(mph or km/h)

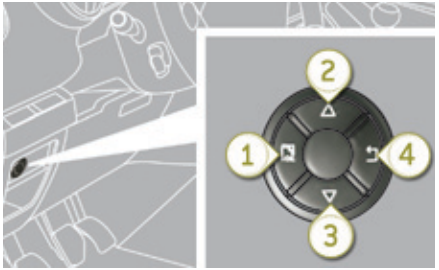
B. Trip distance recorder.
(miles or km)

C. Service indicator.
(miles or km) or,
Engine oil level indicator (depending on version).
or
distance recorder.
(miles or km)

D. Gear shift indicator.
Electronic or automatic gearbox.

E. Warning messages and function status messages, trip computer, GPS navigation information.

Instrument panel navigator



This group of buttons permits:

- **When stationary**, configuration of the vehicle's equipment and the screen settings (languages, units...),
- **While driving**, scrolling of the active functions (trip computer, navigation...).



Controls

There are four buttons to control the screen in the instrument panel:

1. Access the main menu, confirm the selection.
2. Move up through the menu.
3. Move down through the menu.
4. Return to the previous display, exit from the menu.

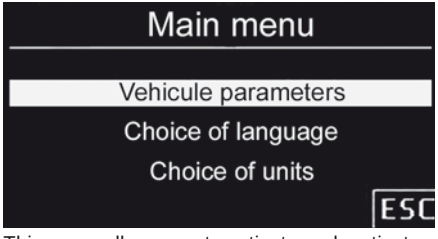
The main menu and its associated functions can only be accessed when stationary, via buttons **1** to **4**.
A message appears in the screen, above a certain speed threshold, indicating that the main menu cannot be displayed.
The trip computer displays can only be accessed while driving, via buttons **2** and **3** (refer to the "Trip computer" section).

Main menu

☞ Press button **1** for access to the main menu and select one of the following functions:
- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Choice of units".

☞ Press button **2** or **3** to move in the screen.
☞ Press button **1** again to confirm the selection.

Vehicle parameters



This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment*:
- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic or manual parking brake* (refer to the "Driving" section).

Choice of language

This menu allows you to select the display language.

Choice of units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

* Depending on the country of sale.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The illumination of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously (fixed) or flash.
Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two different modes. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are switched on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (ignition on).	Wait until the warning lamp has switched off before starting. The duration for which the warning lamp is on is determined by the climatic conditions.
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
AUTO P OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop if automatic application / release is not possible. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	Foot on the brake pedal	fixed.	The brake pedal is not pressed.	You must press the brake pedal firmly to:. - start the engine with an electronic gearbox (lever in position **N**), - manually release the parking brake.
		flashing.	With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on an incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats.	Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.
P	**Parking space sensors**	fixed.	The parking space sensors function is active.	Press the corresponding button to deactivate it.
		flashing.	The system is measuring the space.	Once the measurement has been done, the warning lamp comes on fixed again.
ECO	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed.	The control, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the operation of the airbags (Airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the **ON** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.
If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Service**	on temporarily.	A minor fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown in the screen, such as, for example: - opening of the doors, boot or bonnet, - engine oil low level, - screenwash low level, - flat remote control battery, - saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel) As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp goes off. - a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, - ... For any other faults, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	A major fault has occurred for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the fault by reading the message shown on the screen and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position **P** for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed with the needle in the red zone.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

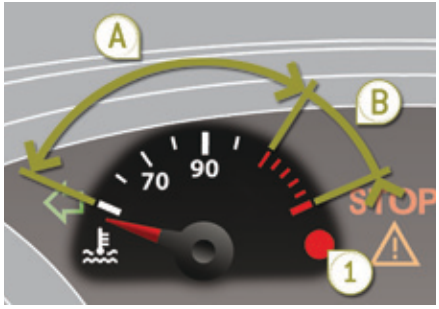
Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® additive (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a dealer PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.
+ SERVICE		flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 375 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank to **avoid a breakdown**: go to a dealer PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank: go to a dealer PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating an emissions control fault.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 650 miles (1 100 km).	Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit : the starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the lower tailgate or the bonnet (with alarm only) is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		
	**Front seat belt not fastened / unfastened**	fixed then flashing accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.	Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
	Rear seat belt not fastened / unfastened	fixed then flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	One or more rear passengers have unfastened their seat belt.	

Warning lamp		is on	Cause	Action / Observations
	**Airbags**	on temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Water in Diesel**	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Service indicator



System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset, according to the mileage covered since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, depending on the country of sale, the level of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account.

More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
Example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.

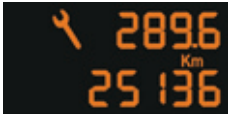


Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 186 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



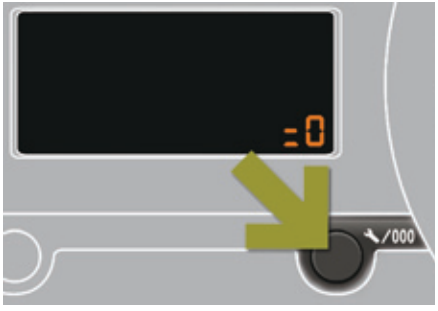
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



With BlueHDi Diesel versions, the **Service** warning lamp also comes on when the ignition is switched on.

For BlueHDi versions, the spanner may also come on early, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the display indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be taken into account.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

- Press the trip distance recorder zero reset button.
  The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator*

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.



The level shown will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level low



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL"**, or the display of a message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel, accompanied by illumination of the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to prevent damage to the engine.
Refer to the "Checks of levels" section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the flashing of **"OIL--"** or the display of a message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the engine oil level is no longer monitored. When the system has a fault, you should check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick (located under the bonnet).

Refer to the "Checks of levels" section.

* Depending on version.

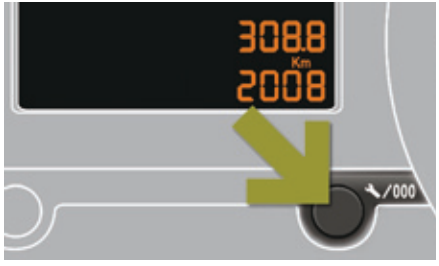
Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

When traveling abroad, you may have to change the units of distance: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

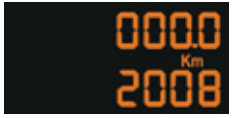
Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip distance recorder

It measures a distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

System for manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel in relation to the exterior brightness.



Activation

When the vehicle lighting is on:

☞ press the button to change the brightness of the instrument panel,

☞ when the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it,

or

☞ when the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it,

☞ when the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

When the vehicle lighting is on, you cannot switch the instrument panel lighting off but you can adjust it to minimum.

Deactivation

When the lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

Monochrome screen A (without audio equipment)

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- alert messages,
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



There are three display control buttons:
- **"ESC"** to abandon the operation in progress,
- **"MENU"** to scroll through the menus or sub-menus,
- **"OK"** to select the menu or sub-menu required.

Main menu



☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to scroll through the various menus of the **main menu**:
- vehicle configuration,
- options,
- display settings,
- languages,
- units.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

* With air conditioning only.

Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- "guide-me-home" lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake** (refer to the "Driving" section),
- parking space sensors (se the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the **"OK"** button to change its value.



☞ Wait for approximately ten seconds without any action to allow the changed data to be recorded or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

The screen then returns to the normal display.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units for:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

** Depending on country of sale.

Monochrome screen A (with audio equipment)

Displays in the screen



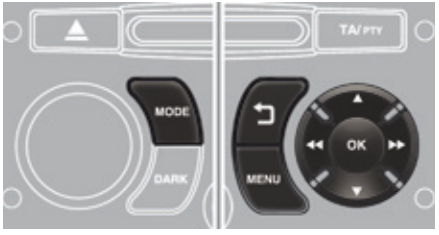
This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- alert messages,
- audio sources (radio, CD, ...),
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. Some can be cleared by pressing the **"] arrow"** button.

* With air conditioning only.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source, ...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm, or



- press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the audio equipment switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), the CD or the CD changer (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

! For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake** (refer to the "Driving" section),
- ...

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"↰] arrow"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display.

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

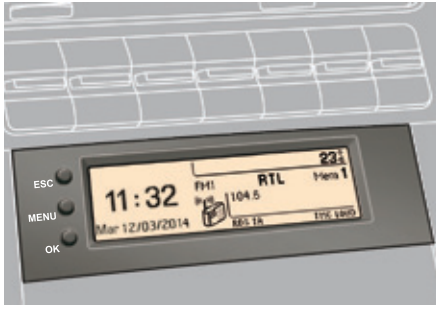
- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

** Depending on the country of sale.

Monochrome screen C (with PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5))

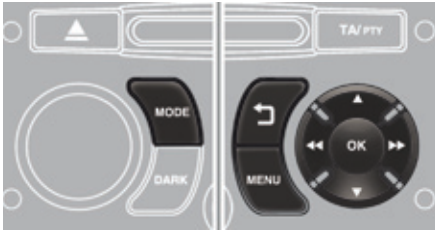
Displays in the screen



Displays according to context:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature with air conditioning (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- trip computer (see the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- screen and vehicle equipment parameter setting menus.

Controls



From the audio equipment control panel, you can:

- press the "**MENU**" button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the "**MODE**" button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the "**OK**" button to confirm, or



- press this button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - trip computer (see the corresponding section),
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (Bluetooth system).
- Press the"▲" or "▼" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the "**OK**" button.



"Audio functions" menu

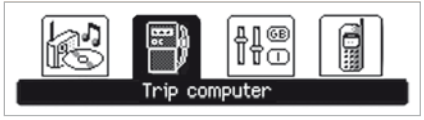
With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText) or CD (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) section.

"Trip computer" menu

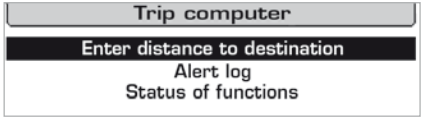
Once this menu has been selected, you can consult information concerning the status of the vehicle (alert log, status of the functions...).

- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the general menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.



- ☞ On the **"Trip computer"** menu, select one of the applications:

Enter the distance to the destination



This allows you to enter an approximate value for the distance to the final destination.

Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen

Status of functions

This summarises the status of the functions present on the vehicle.

* Depending on the country of sale.

"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

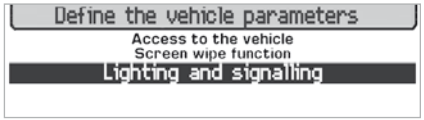
Define the vehicle parameters

Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment (according to country):

- wiper linked with reverse gear (see "Visibility" section),
- selective unlocking (see the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home lighting (see the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (see the "Visibility" section),
- automatic parking brake* (see the "Driving" section),
- ...

Example: setting of the duration of the guide-me-home lighting

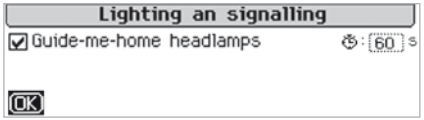
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the "**OK**" button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "**OK**" button to select the "**OK**" box and confirm or press the "**arrow**" button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- selection of the units.

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the "Display configuration" menu, then the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, to select the "Adjust date and time" line, then on the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button then adjust the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the "**OK**" button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm, or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the screen display language.



"Telephone" menu

With the audio equipment switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free kit (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (pick up, hang up, call waiting, secret mode...).

For more information on the telephone application, refer to the PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) section.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6))

Displays in the screen



Depending on the context, it displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- parking space measurement,
- audio functions,
- directory and telephone information,
- satellite navigation system information,
- trip computer,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen, the satellite navigation system and vehicle systems.
- the image from the reversing camera.

Controls



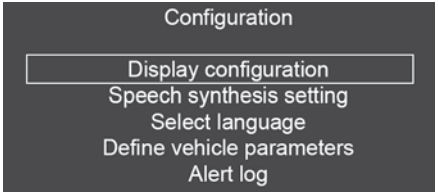
From the navigation system control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"PHONE"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the dial **A** to select a function, an item in a list,
- ☞ press button **B** to confirm the selection, or
- ☞ press the **"Back"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

With repeated presses on the **C "MODE"** button, the screen displays:

- "RADIO / MEDIA"*,
- "TELEPHONE"*,
- "FULL SCREEN MAP"*,
- "MAP IN A WINDOW"*,
- "TRIP COMPUTER".

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to open the configuration menu:

- "Display configuration",
- "Speech synthesis setting".
- "Select language",
- "Define vehicle parameters",
- "Alert log".

For the operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjusting the position...), refer to the "Access to the retractable screen" section.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Display configuration

This menu is used to select the colour scheme for the screen, adjust the brightness, set the date and time and to choose the units for distance (km or miles), fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l) and temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit).

Adjusting the date and time

- Press on **SETUP**.
- Select "Display configuration" and confirm.
- Select "Set date and time" and confirm.

Select "Minute adjustment via GPS" so that the minutes are adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

- Select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing on **OK**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.
- Adjust the settings one by one.
- Select "**OK**" in the screen then confirm to save the setting.

Adjusting the voice synthesiser

This menu is used to adjust the volume setting for navigation instructions and to choose the type of voice (male or female).

Choice of language

This menu is used to choose the language used by the screen from a defined list.

Vehicle parameters

This menu is used to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort systems, classified by category:

- "Driver aid":
  - "Electric brake*" (Automatic electric parking brake; see "Driving" section),
- "Wiper operation":
  - "**Rear wiper operates in reverse: ON / OFF**" (rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the "Visibility" section),
- "Vehicle access" (see "Access" section):
  - "**Plip action: all doors, driver only**" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
- "**Lighting configuration**" (see "Visibility" section):
  - "**Duration of guide me home lighting: OFF / 15 s / 30 s / 60 s**" (Automatic guide me home lighting),
  - "Directional headlights": **ON / OFF**" (Main / additional directional lighting).

Alert log

This lists the active alerts by displaying in turn the different messages associated with them.

* Depending on country.

16/9 retractable colour screen (PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D))

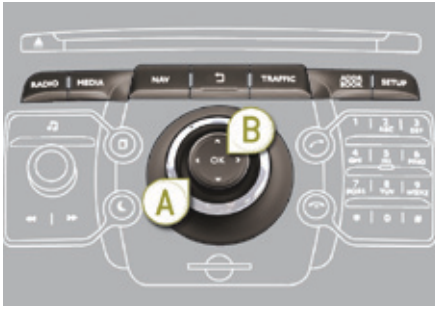
Displays in the screen



According to context, it displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- satellite navigation system information.
- visual parking assistance,
- the result of the measurement of free space,
- contacts and telephone information,
- configuration menus for the screen and the navigation system,

Controls



From the navigation system control panel:

☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button for access to the corresponding menu,

☞ turn the navigator knob **A** to move the selection,

☞ press the "**OK**" navigator central button **B** to confirm the selection,

or



☞ press the this button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

i For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

i For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

"SETUP" menu

☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button for access to the **"SETUP"** menu. It allows you to adjust settings for the following functions:
- "Languages and voice functions"
- "Date and time",
- "Display screen",
- "Units",
- "System parameters".

Languages and voice functions

This menu allows you to:
- select the language used by the display,
- select the settings for voice recognition (on/off, instructions on use, personal voice training...),
- adjust the volume of the voice synthesiser.

Date and time

☞ Press "**SETUP**".
☞ Select "Display configuration" and confirm.
☞ Select "Adjust date and time" and confirm.

Select "Synchronise minutes with GPS" for the adjustment of minutes to be done automatically by satellite reception.
☞ Select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing "OK", then adjust the setting and confirm again.
☞ Adjust the settings one by one.
☞ Select "OK" in the screen then confirm to save the settings.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Units

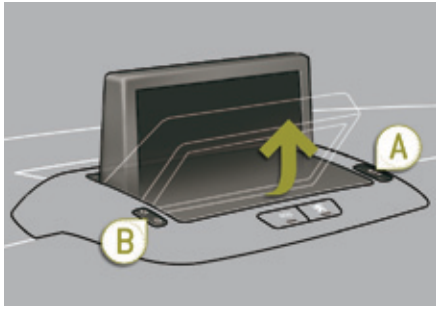
This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and fuel consumption (km/l, l/100 or mpg).

System parameters

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Access to the retractable screen



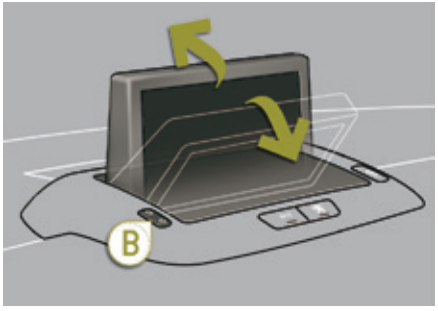
The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on. It closes automatically three seconds after switching off the ignition if the audio and telematics system is switched off.

You can open or close the screen at any time, with the ignition on, using control **A**.

- Press button **A**: the screen folds.
- Press button **A** again: the screen opens again.

If you have closed the screen, it will open again automatically:

- on switching on the audio and navigation system (unless it had been closed manually while the system was in operation),
- when an outgoing telephone call is made,
- when a voice command is given,
- when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is displayed (PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)).



Adjusting the angle of the screen

You can adjust the angle of the screen to one of four defined positions, by repeated presses on the front or back of the control **B**. The position of the screen is memorised on closing.

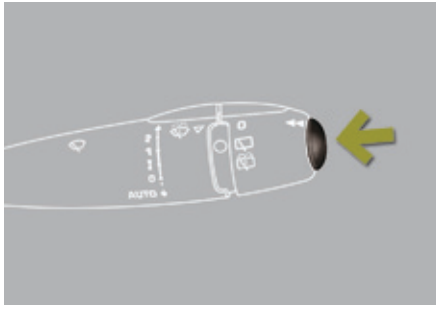
Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer data in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,

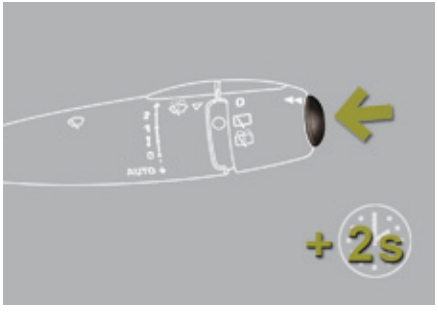


- average speed.



☞ The next press returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset

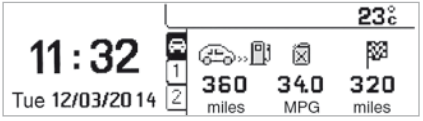


☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Trip computer

System which provides current information concerning the trip (range, consumption…).

Monochrome screen C



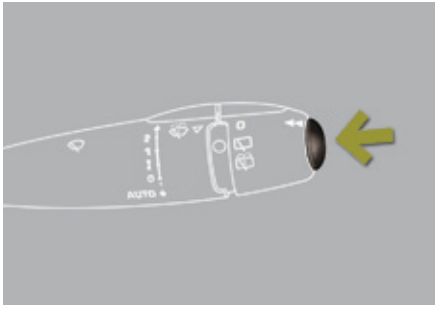
16/9 colour screen



Instrument panel screen

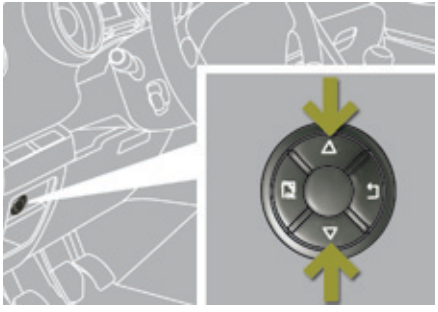


Information displays



In the screen C or the colour screen

☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears on the multifunction screen or on the instrument panel screen.

In the instrument panel screen

☞ Press the up and down arrows on the navigator to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

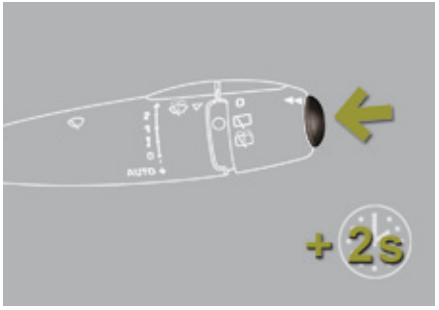
- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled.

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.

- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.

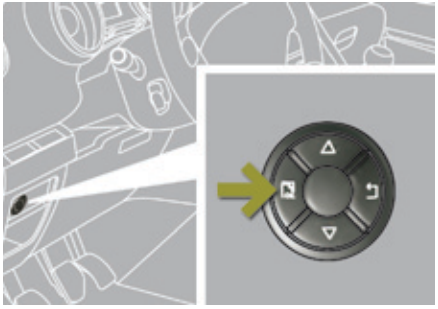
☞ Pressing the button again takes you to a black screen.
A further press returns you to the normal display.

Trip zero reset



With the screen C or the colour screen

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the control for more than two seconds.



With the instrument panel screen

☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the **"OK"** button on the navigator for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Trip computer, a few definitions



Range

(miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.



Distance remaining to destination

(miles or km)
This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.
If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.



Stop & Start time counter

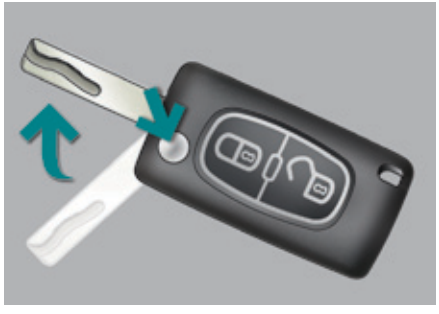
(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Complete unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Selective unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

Selective unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The selective unlocking is only available on versions fitted with deadlocking.



The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

ℹ The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
According to version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on and the alarm is deactivated.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

☞ Press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold at the same time, the alarm is activated.

i If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action then on the doors or boot, it will relock automatically after about thirty seconds.
If the alarm had been activated previously, it will not be reactivated automatically.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely or press the closed padlock for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

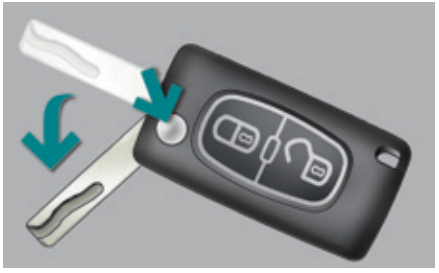
Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely and hold it in this position for more than two seconds to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

! According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.
Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Folding the key





☞ First press this button to fold the key.

i If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

Locating your vehicle



☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

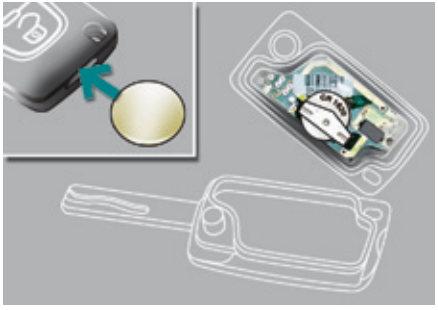
Reinitialisation

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

! If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620 / 3 volts.

If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message.

- Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- Clip the casing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible the key code label.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to look up the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
No remote control can operate when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, never leave children alone in the vehicle, except for a very short period.
In all cases, it is essential to remove the key from the ignition switch when leaving the vehicle.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the pairing of all of the keys in your possession checked by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that only your keys can be used to open and start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Alarm

System which protects and provides a deterrent against the theft of your vehicle. It provides two types of protection, exterior and interior, as well as an anti-tamper function.

Exterior perimiter protection

The system detects opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to enter the vehicle by forcing a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric protection

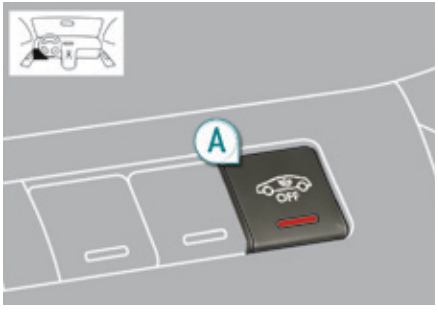
The system detects any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or moves inside the vehicle.
If you wish to leave a pet in the vehicle or a window partially open, deactivate the interior volumetric protection.

Anti-tamper function

The system detects the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to put the wires of the siren, the central control or the battery out of service.

! Do not make any modifications to the alarm system, this could cause malfunctions.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm



Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The alarm is activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

i If a door, the boot or the bonnet is not fully closed, the vehicle is then not locked, but perimeter monitoring will be active after a period of 45 seconds, at the same time as the volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm is deactivated; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

i In the event of automatic relocking of the vehicle (occurs after an unintentional unlocking followed by a period of 30 seconds without opening a door or the boot), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate the system, it is necessary to unlock the vehicle and then lock it again using the key or the remote control.

Locking the vehicle with exterior protection alarm only

Deactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press button **A** until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the locking button on the remote control.

The exterior protection alarm alone remains activated; the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes once per second.

i To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric protection

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the remote control.
- ☞ Relock the vehicle using the remote control.

The alarm is activated again with both types of protection; the indicator lamp in button **A** switches off.

Triggering

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for approximately thirty seconds.
After it has been triggered, the alarm is again operational.

! If the alarm is triggered ten times in succession, the eleventh time will result in it becoming inactive.
If the indicator lamp in button **A** flashes rapidly, this indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.
To avoid triggering the alarm when washing your vehicle, lock it using the key in the driver's door lock.
Do not activate the alarm before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the siren will sound.

Failure of the remote control

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

The direction indicators do not come on.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, illumination the indicator lamp in button **A** for ten seconds indicates a siren fault.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic operation*

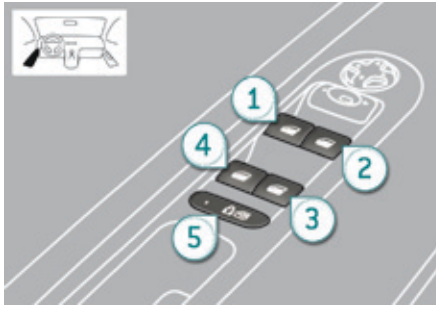
Depending on the legislation in force in your country, one of these cases may occur:

- 45 seconds after the vehicle is locked using the remote control, the alarm is activated, regardless of the status of the doors and boot.
- 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the alarm is activated.
  - ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

Electric windows

System intended to open or close a window manually or automatically. Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a system for deactivation in the event of misuse of the rear controls.



1. **Driver**
2. **Passenger**
3. **Rear right**
4. **Rear left**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric windows and doors.**

One-touch electric windows

Manual mode

☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

Automatic mode

☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.

☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a front door is opened.
If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control pad of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated to prevent damage to the electric window motor.
After this, you have approximately one minute in which to close the window.
Once the window is closed, the controls will become operational again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

☞ Press and hold the control until the window opens fully.

☞ Then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes.

☞ Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically or following disconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

For each window:

- Pull the control until the window stops.
- Release the control and pull it again, repeat these operations until the window closes fully.
- Continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.
- Press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position.
- Once the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric windows and doors



- For the safety of your children, with the ignition on, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.
Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (see "Child lock").

Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

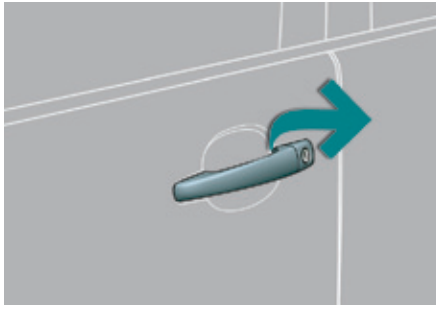
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Doors

Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull the door control (front or rear) to open the door; this unlocks this vehicle completely.

! The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

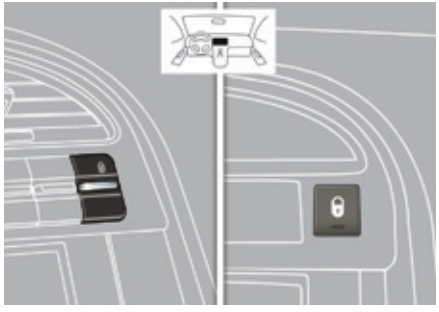
Closing

When a door or the boot is not closed correctly:

- **When the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **When the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message for a few seconds.

Centralised locking control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.



Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

When locking / deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

☞ After normal locking, pull the interior door lever to unlock the vehicle.

☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic central locking

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and boot while driving. You can activate or deactivate this function.

Activation



☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

! A confirmation message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

Automatic locking

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and boot lock automatically.
If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.
If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors and boot temporarily.

! In the event of an impact, the doors unlock automatically.

Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



☞ Open the doors.
☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).
☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.
☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

BOOT

Opening



☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the handle and raise the tailgate.

Closing



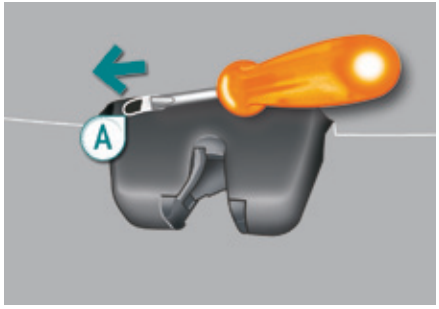
☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the boot can also be opened by a second press on the open padlock on the remote control.

Tailgate release



System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Heating and Ventilation

System which creates and maintains good conditions of comfort and visibility in the vehicle's passenger compartment.

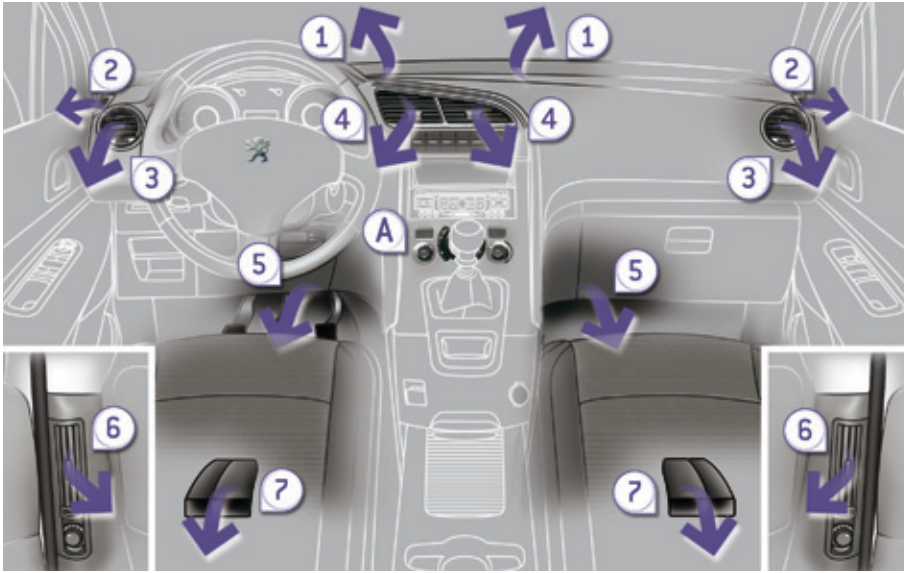
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, according to the level of equipment.
The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.
The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.
These controls are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.



Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- If the interior temperature remains very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a considerable time, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few minutes. Place the air flow control at a sufficient level to provide an adequate renewal of air in the passenger compartment.
- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Use in preference the intake of exterior air as prolonged use of the air recirculation may cause misting of the windows and side windows.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its second special active filter, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- The air conditioning uses power from the engine while operating. This results in an increase in the vehicle's fuel consumption.
  When towing at or near maximum capacity or on steep slopes in high ambient temperatures, switching off the air conditioning saves engine power and so improves towing capacity.
  Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary, which is perfectly normal.
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly.
- If the system does not produce cold air, do not use it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

Rear ventilation adjustment



After pressing the "REAR" button, turn the adjustment dial of the rear side vents to decrease or increase the flow of air.
Take care not to obstruct the side vents and the air outlets on the floor.
To shut off the flow of air, close the vents and set the dial to 0.

Manual air conditioning



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

> ☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and front-rear footwells.



Footwells, front-rear (closing the vents increases the flow to the footwells).



Central, side and rear vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air limits misting of the windscreen and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.
Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the air quality and demisting performance.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

Demisting/defrosting





The marking on the control panel indicates the position of the controls to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows:

- ☞ place the air intake control **4** in the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp off),
- ☞ place the air distribution dial **3** in the "Windscreen position",
- ☞ place the air flow dial **2** in position 5 (maximum),
- ☞ place the temperature dial **1** in the red position (hot).

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".

To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Rear screen demist - defrost



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning only operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme



☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.
This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2-3. Driver-passenger side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required more quickly. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off or the indicator lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** (low) is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** (high) is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the **"A/C"** button comes on.

To obtain cool air sooner, you can use air recirculation for a few moments. Then return to exterior air intake.

In winter, we recommend that you close the rear vents.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively according to the value requested.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

8. Air recirculation



☞ Press this button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on.



- Air closed/intake (automatic mode). Press this button, the warning lamp comes on.



- Forced closing of the air intake (manual mode). Press this button to recirculate the interior air, the warning lamp come on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press the "auto" button to allow the intake of exterior air and avoid the misting of windows.

9. Rear ventilation (Rear)



☞ Press this button to allow the air to circulate towards the rear. The temperature will be equal to the left-hand comfort value for the rear left passengers and equal to the right-hand comfort value for the rear right passengers. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Switching the system off/on

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

! Avoid driving for prolonged periods with the system off.

Front seats with manual adjustments

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

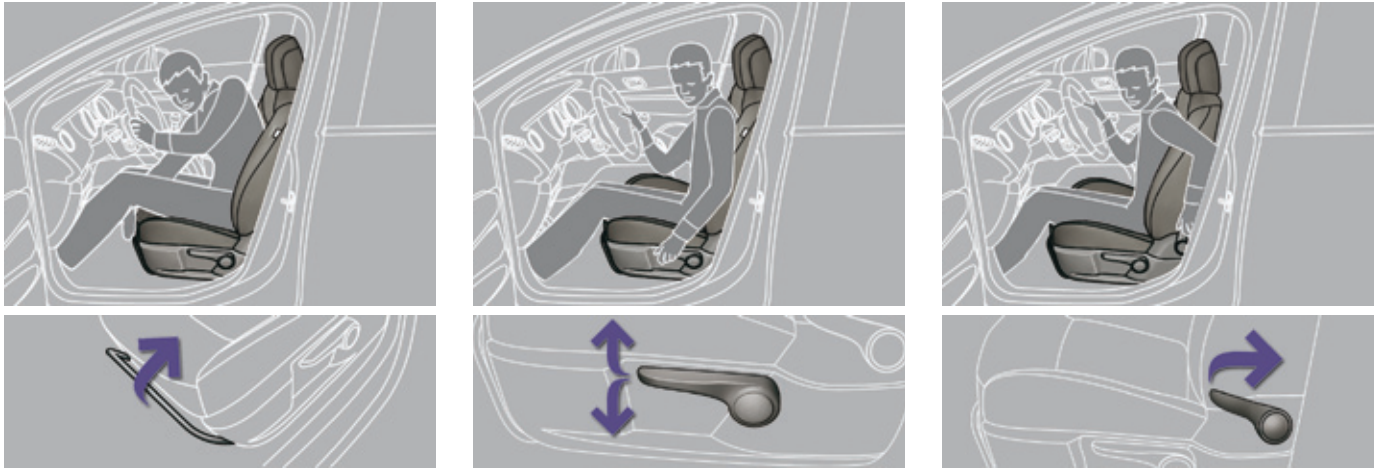
☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as required, to obtain the position required.

Backrest angle

☞ Push the control rearwards.



! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

Driver's electric seat

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Cushion height and angle

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Backrest angle

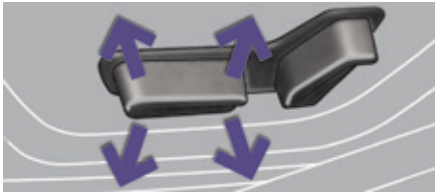
☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.

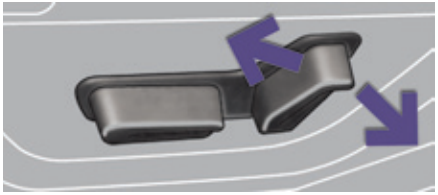








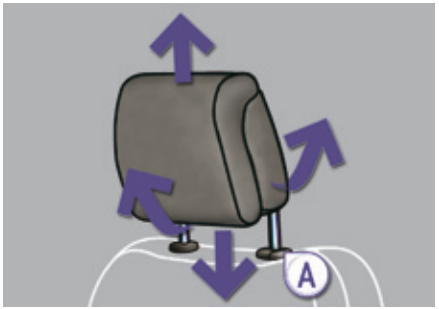




The electric functions of the driver's seat are active for approximately one minute after opening the front door. They are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off and in economy mode.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.

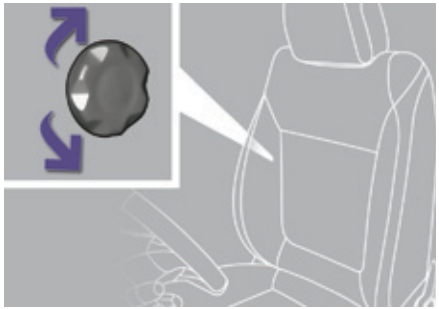
Head restraint height and angle adjustment



- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Before moving off, check the adjustment of the head restraint; adjust it if the seat has been occupied by someone of different size.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Manual lumbar adjustment



☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Heated seats control

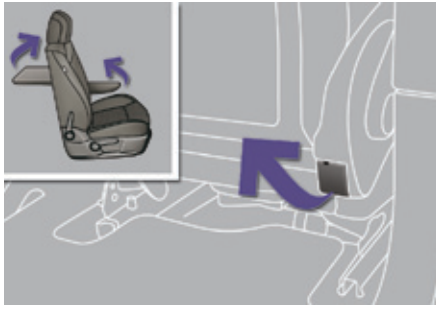


With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

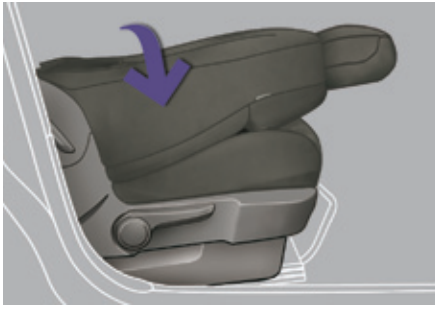
0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

Table position, front passenger seat

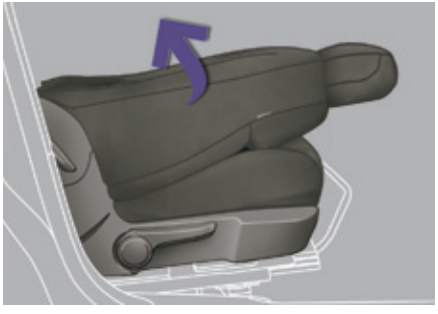


Folding the seat backrest

- ☞ Raise the armrest and fold up the "aircraft" style table, fixed on the back of the seat.
- ☞ Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.
- ☞ To make the operation easier, place the head restraint in the low position (if the seat is in the fully forward position).
- ☞ If your vehicle is fitted with the video pack, place the protective cover on the head restraint.
- ☞ Lift the control, located behind the seat, then guide the seat back forwards.



This position, associated with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.
The maximum weight on the seat is 30 kg.



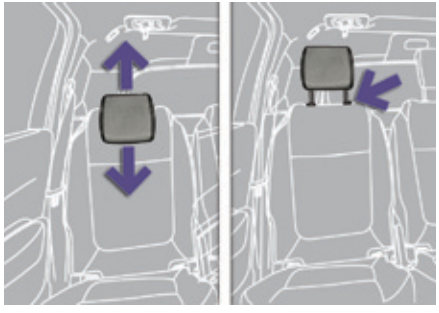
Returning the seat to the normal position

- ☞ Guide the seat backrest rearwards until it locks in place.

! When the seat backrest is in this position, only the 2nd row passenger seat located behind the driver can be used.



Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints can be removed and have two positions:

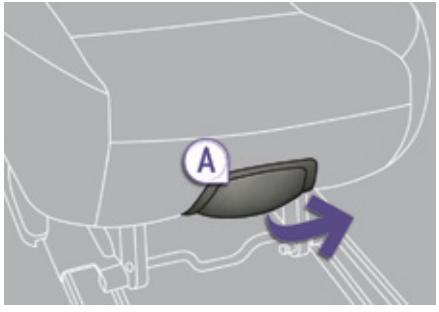
- high, position for use,
- low, storage position.

To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
To lower it, press the lug then the head restraint.
To remove it, place it in the high position, push the lug and pull it upwards.
To refit it, engage the head restraint rods in the holes taking care to remain in line with the seat back.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed, they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

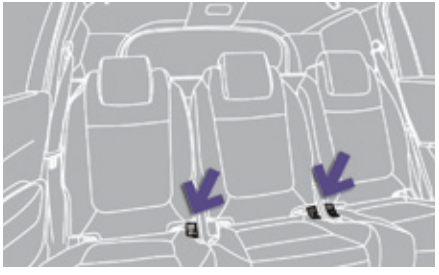
2nd row seats

Forwards-backwards adjustment

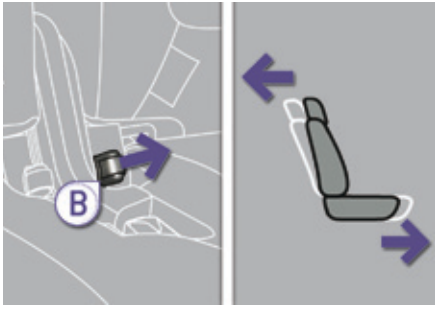


Lift the control **A**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the seat to the position desired.

"Comfort" position



The three 2nd row seats are independent of each other and all the same width. They all have a "comfort" position.



Placing a seat in the "comfort" position

☞ Pull on the control **B** and guide the seat rearwards.

The backrest reclines and the seat base moves forward slightly.

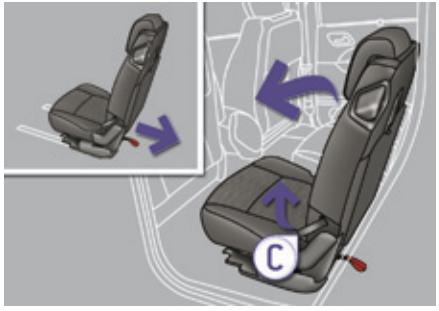
Returning the seat to the initial position

☞ Pull on the control **B** and allow the seat to come forwards.

! Always supervise any movements of seats by children.

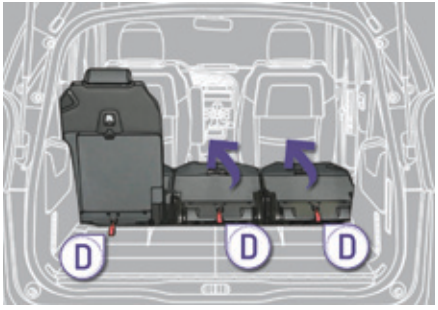
Flat floor

Each seat can be folded onto the floor to enable you to modify your vehicle's interior space.



Folding the seat from the 2nd row

- ☞ Place the seats as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Pull firmly upwards on strap **C**, to unlock the seat; keep pulling until the seat is fully folded.
- ☞ Push the backrest slightly forwards so that the backrest pivots, folding onto the seat base. The assembly then lowers onto the floor.

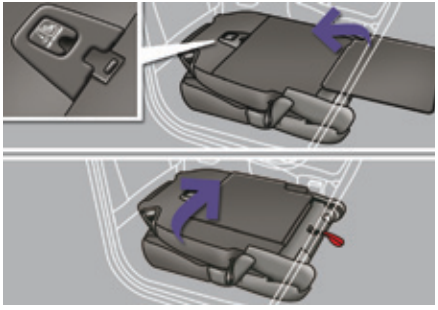


Folding the seat from the boot

When loading, for example, you can fold the seat or seats directly from the boot, once you have folded the 3rd row seats (7 seat version).

- ☞ Place the seats as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Pull on the strap **D** to release the chosen seat and push the backrest gently forwards.

i To avoid damaging the mechanism, the strap **D** unclips under excessive force. Simply reclip it to restore the system to working order.



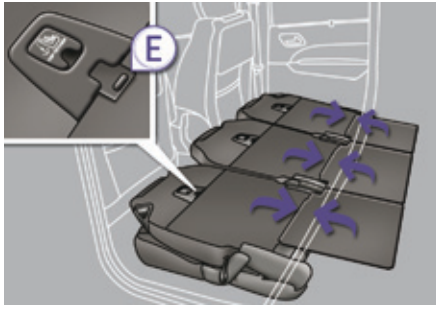
Repositioning seat

- ☞ If necessary, return the 2nd row seat rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
- ☞ Raise the backrest and push it rearwards until it locks.

! Before moving the 3rd row seats (7 seat version), return the 2nd row seat rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.
Emergency exit: if the first system (strap **C**) fails, strap **D** enables the 3rd row passengers to exit quickly.

Supervise any movement of seats by children.

Rigid panel



Each 2nd row seat backrest has a rigid panel attached.

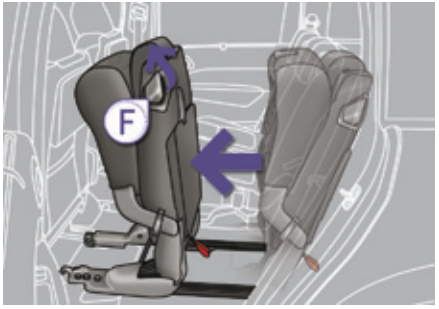
This panel enables you:

- to have a continuous load surface in the boot, whatever the positions of the seats,
- to avoid having objects sliding under the 2nd row seats. 30 kg maximum on each panel.

Releasing / Locking the rigid panel

- ☞ Before deploying the rigid panels, check that the 2nd row seats are positioned as far towards the rear as possible.
- ☞ Slide the latch **E** on the panel upwards, to release it.
- ☞ Return the panel to its initial position, then slide the latch **E** downwards, to lock it in place.

Entering / Exiting the 3rd row (7 seat version)



- ☞ Raise the aircraft style table on the 2nd row seat if it is down.
- ☞ Hold the control **F** in the raised position, the seat unlocks and the seat base comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Push the seat backrest forwards, holding the control **F** forwards.

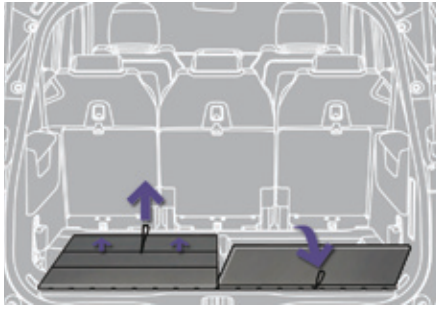
Repositioning the seat, from the outside, with the door open

If there are passengers seated in the 3rd row (7 seat version):

- ☞ Manually return the assembly as far as possible rearwards; the seat does not return as far as the maximum rearwards position so as to retain leg space for the 3rd row passengers.
- ☞ Fold the seat base.

3rd row seats (7 seat version)

Concertina boards



Two rigid concertina boards, which cannot be separated from the vehicle, cover the two 3rd row seats, when these are in the folded position.

Folding the concertina boards

☞ Pull on the control, the 3 sections of the board will fold like a concertina.

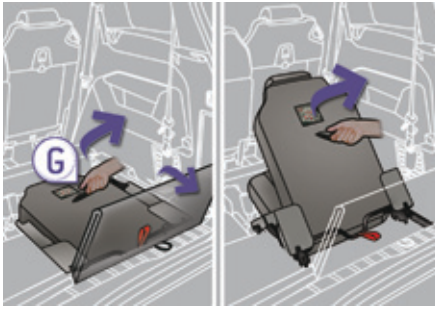
When the 3rd row seats are upright, these concertina boards can be left either:

- flat behind the seats,
- in the vertical position,

thereby leaving a storage area available.

The two rigid boards can each support a maximum of 100 kg.

Installing a seat



☞ Remove the load space screen.

☞ If necessary, return the 2nd row rigid panels to their initial position and lock them.

☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.

☞ Pull on the control **G**, located behind the seat backrest. The backrest tilts rearwards pulling the seat base with it. The seat locks in the open position.

Storing a seat



- ☞ Lower the head restraints.
- ☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.
- ☞ Pull on the control **H**, located at the bottom of the seat backrest. The seat is released.
- ☞ Next push the backrest gently forwards. The backrest pivots folding onto the seat base. The seat base then folds into the stowage area provided for that purpose.
- ☞ Reposition the concertina boards over the folded seats.

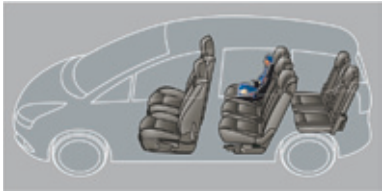
! Before moving the 3rd row seats, return the rigid panels of the 2nd row seats to the upright position and lock them in place.
Do not try to fold a 3rd row seat that has not first had the backrest fully locked in place.
Do not leave objects either on or underneath the seat bases of the 3rd row seats when you are folding them.
Do not leave your hand on the control **H** as you fold the seats, as you risk trapping your fingers.

Seat modularity and the various seat configurations

Designed to be modular, your vehicle offers numerous seat installation and loading configurations.
Operations to change the existing configuration must only be carried out when stationary (see paragraphs "Rear seats").

Examples of configurations

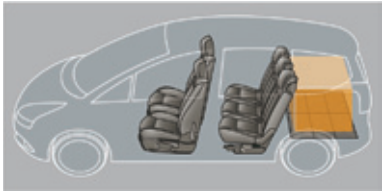
7 seats



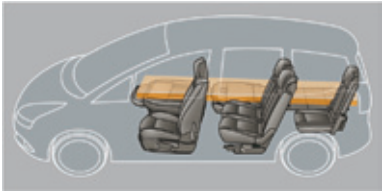
Transport (4 seats)



5 seats



Transporting long objects



Loading a large volume



Mirrors

Door mirrors

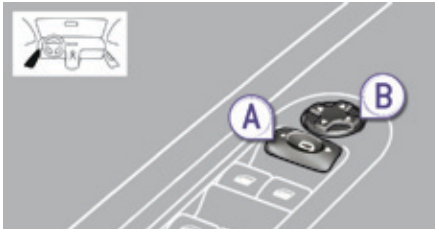


Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

! The rear screen demist - defrost can only operate when the engine is running.



Adjustment

☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- Automatic: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- Manual: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

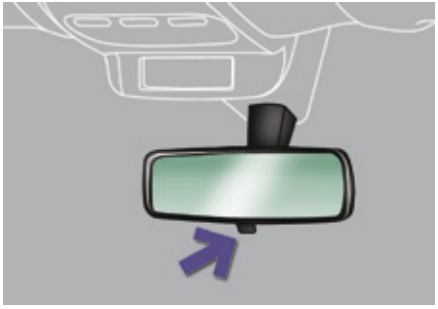
i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

i If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day / night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

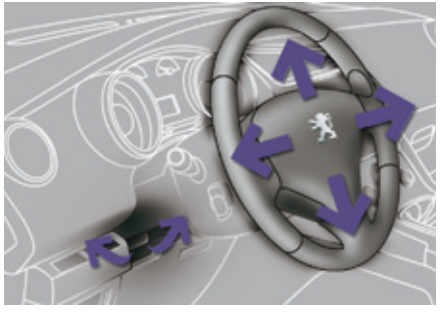
Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Steering wheel adjustment



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the lighting progressively in relation to the climatic conditions and so improve the driver's visibility:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are installed to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better visibility,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

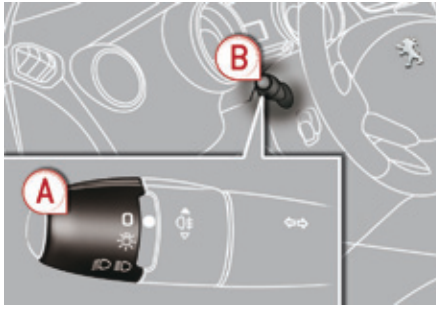
Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available according to the following options:

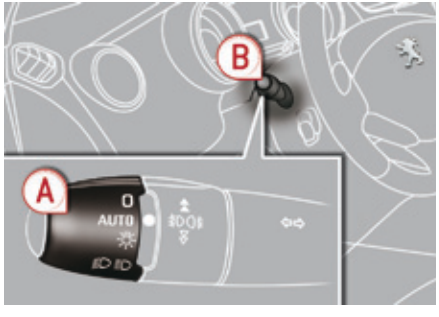
- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic lighting,
- directional headlamps.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact an official dealer or a qualified workshop.



Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting

Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0 Lighting off / daytime running lamps.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

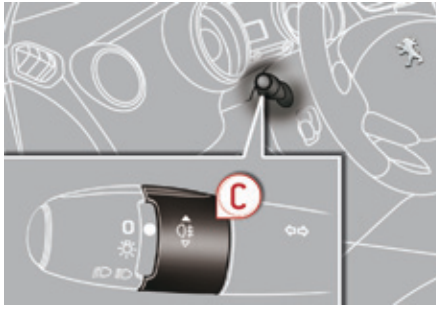
Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

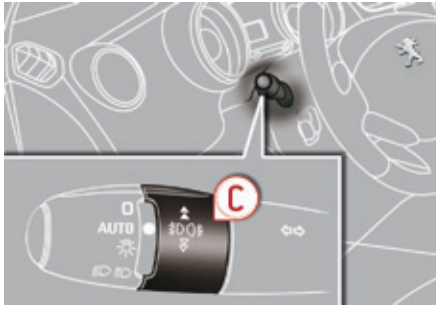
In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.



Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front and rear foglamps

C. Foglamp selection ring.

Rear foglamp

This operates with dipped and main beam headlamps.

- To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch off the foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.

Front and rear foglamps

The rear foglamp operates with the dipped and main beam headlamps.
The front foglamps also operate with the sidelamps.

- To switch on the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch on the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards again.
- To switch off the rear foglamp, turn the ring **C** rearwards.
- To switch off the front foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards again.

When the lighting is switched on automatically (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on until the rear foglamp is switched off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and the sidelamps will remain on.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

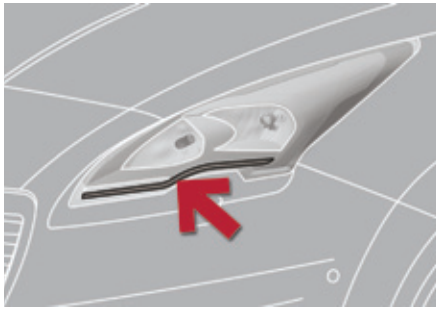
Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.
If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.
They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

Daytime running lamps (LEDs)



They come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "**0**" or "**AUTO**".

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on



☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming



The lighting duration is selected via the vehicle configuration menu.

The duration of the welcome lighting is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message in the screen.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic "guide-me-home" lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position), under low ambient light the dipped beams headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Programming

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting, is set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

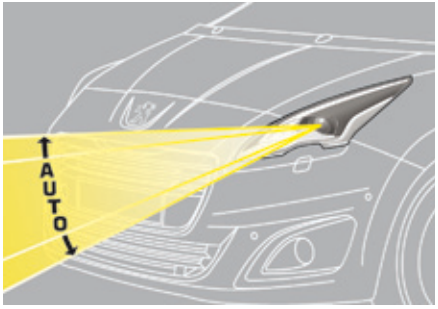
0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic adjustment of the xenon headlamps



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamps beam automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen. The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

If a malfunction occurs, do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Directional lighting

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.
The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

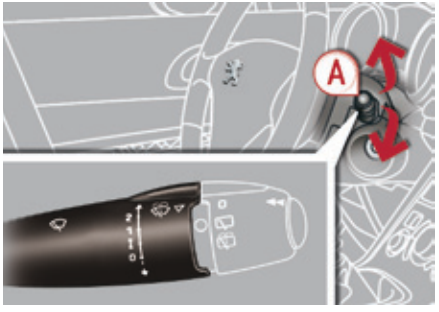
When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.
The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Wiper controls

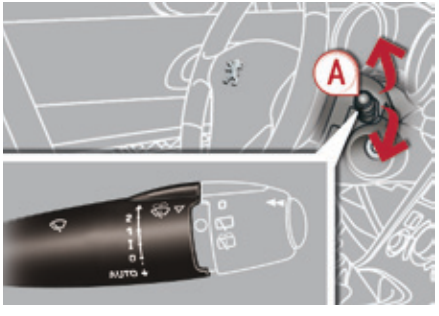
System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:
- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.



Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping

Manual controls

The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk.

2 Fast (heavy rain).

1 Normal (moderate rain).

I Intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

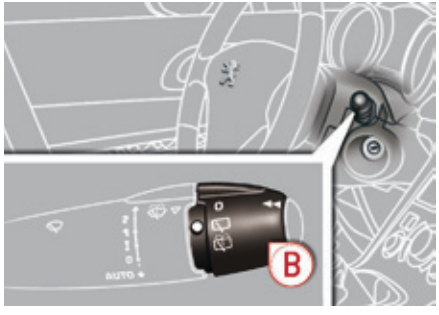
0 Off.

↓ Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic, then single wipe (see the corresponding section).

Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring:

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

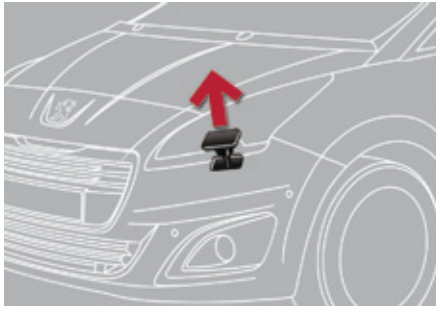
When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



Windscreen wash

Pull the wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the wipers operate for a set time.
The headlamp wash is also activated **if the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Headlamp wash

Press the end of the lighting stalk to activate the headlamp wash, when the dipped beam headlamps are on.

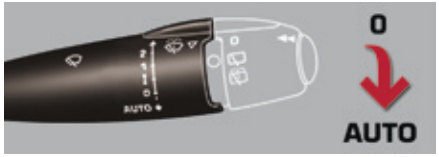
To reduce the consumption of screenwash fluid, the headlamp washers only operate with the first operation of the screenwash.

Screenwash/headlamp wash low level

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash / headlamp wash reservoir.

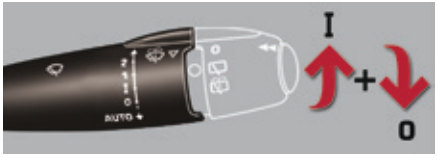
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.
It is accompanied by a message in the screen.



Switching off

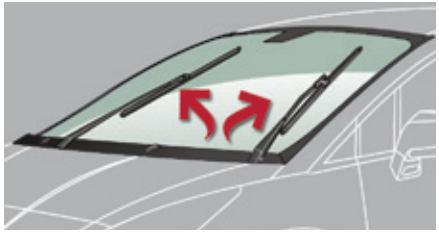
This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.
It is accompanied by a message in the screen.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

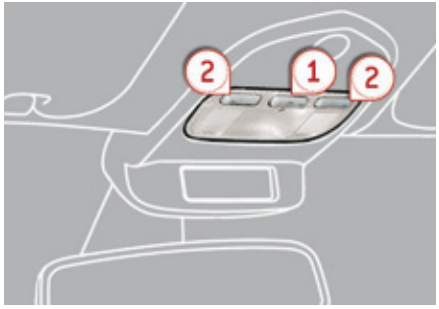


This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

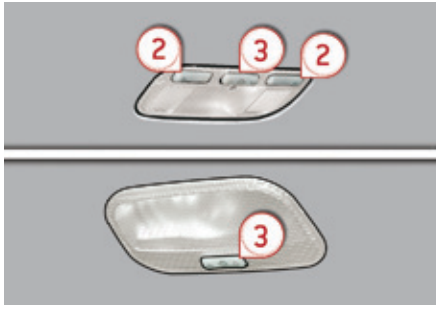
- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Courtesy lamps



1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**



3. **Rear courtesy lamp**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

With the "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

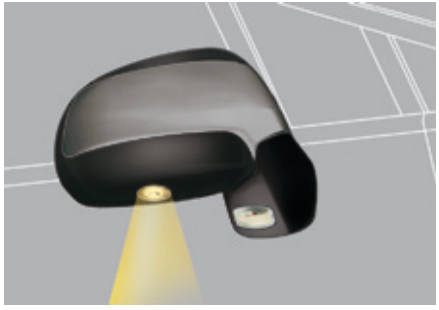
- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

The spotlamps come on:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when you remove the key from the ignition,
- when you open a door,
- when you use the remote control.

Switching off

They are timed to go off automatically.

Interior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It operates with the automatic illumination of headlamps.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The courtesy lamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The interior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time or when one of the doors is opened.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The duration of the welcome lighting is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Switching on

At night, the mood lamp in the front courtesy lamp comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Footwell lighting

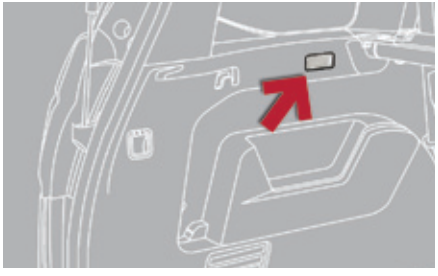
The soft lighting provided by the footwell lamps improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Activation



Its operation is identical to that of the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

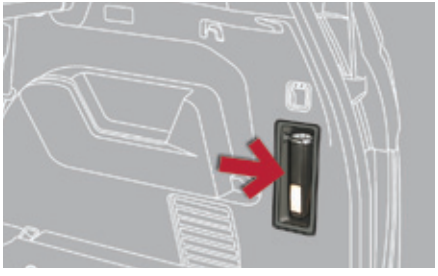
Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

Different lighting times are available:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

Torch



Portable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

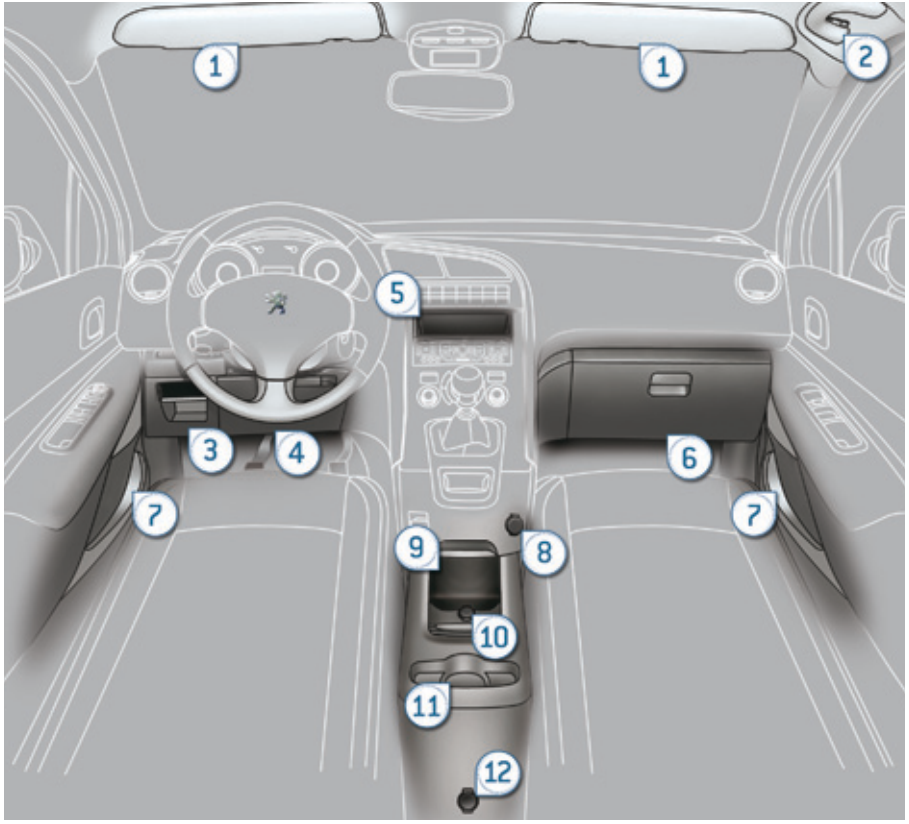
For the torch function, refer to the "Fittings" section.

Operation

Once engaged firmly in its location, it comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed. It operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries. It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and recharges while you are driving.

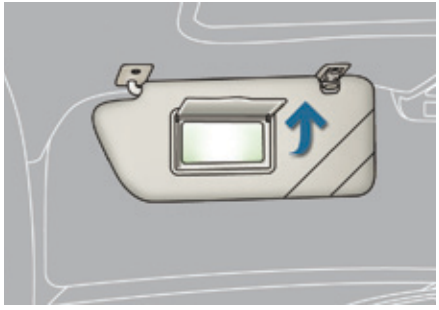
Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.

Interior fittings



1. **Sun visor**
2. **Grab handle with coat hook**
3. **Storage compartment**
4. **Storage compartment under the steering wheel**
5. **Storage compartment**
6. **Illuminated glove box**
7. **Door pockets**
8. **Front 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
9. **Storage compartment**
10. **PEUGEOT Connect USB**
11. **Cup holder**
12. **Rear 12 V accessory socket (120 W)**

Sun visor

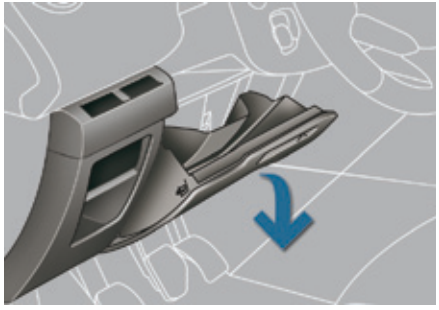


Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Driver's storage compartments



Storage box

This has storage areas for the handbook pack, ...

☞ To open, pull the handle then tilt the box.

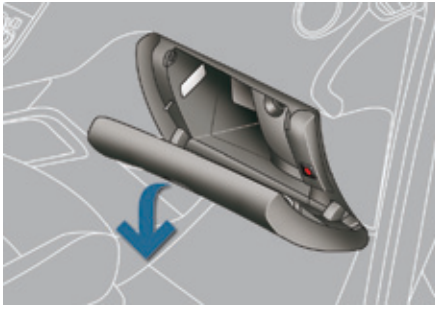
Card holder

This can be used for a toll payment ticket or parking card, for example.

Coin storage

Storage

Illuminated glove box



This has storage areas, audio sockets for a portable player and a location for the SIM card (only with PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)), ...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

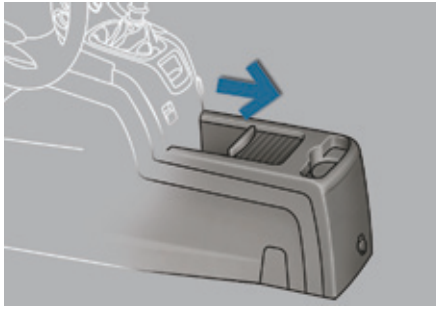
The lamp comes on when the lid is opened.

To connect a portable player or a SIM card, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Centre console

Storage device for the driver and front passenger.

Storage

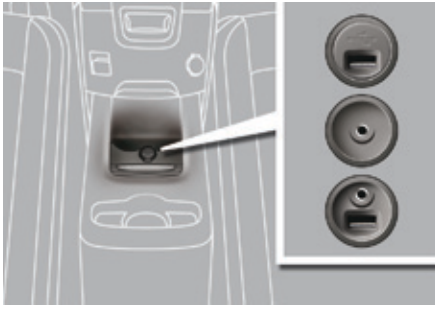


☞ Slide the cover for access to the 10.5 litre storage compartment.

This can contain 2 half-litre bottles.

A ventilation outlet distributes cooled air.

PEUGEOT Connect USB



This connection unit consists of a JACK auxiliary socket and/or a USB port.

It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

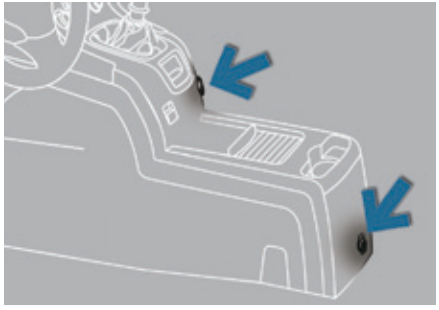
You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them in the multifunction screen.

Connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically.

While charging, a message is displayed if the current consumption by the portable device exceeds the amperage delivered by the vehicle.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

12 V accessory sockets

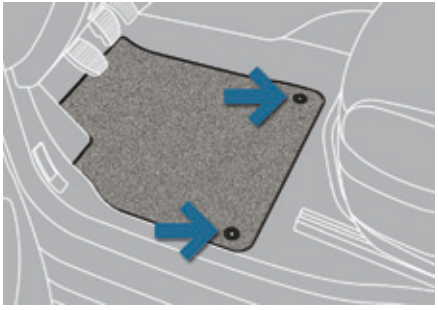


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 Watts), remove the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Exceeding the maximum power could result in damage to your accessory.

Mats

Removable carpet protection.



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

☞ move the seat as far back as possible,

☞ unclip the fixings,

☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

☞ position the mat correctly,

☞ refit the fixings by pressing,

☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

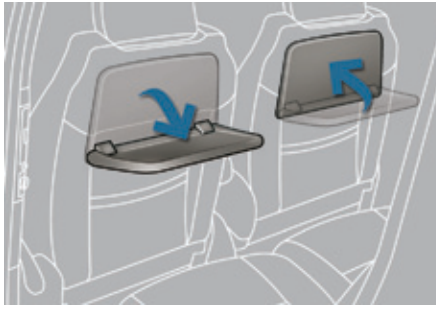
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

"Aircraft" type tables

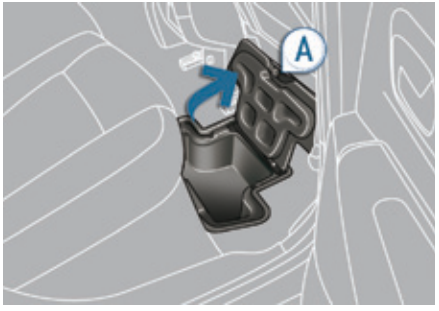


Installed on the back of each front seat, these allow you to set down objects.

- ☞ To use the table, lower it fully until it locks in the low position.
- ☞ To store the table, raise it, passing the point of resistance, to the high position.

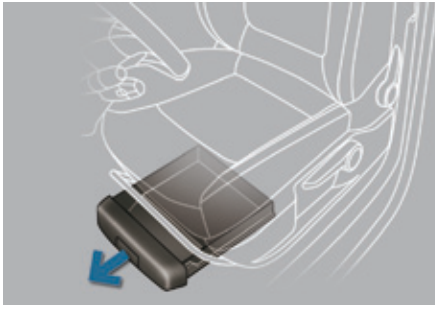
! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table before placing the seat in the table position. Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.

Storage compartments under the rear footwells



Depending on the configuration, the vehicle has storage compartments under the footwells, located forward of the outer rear seats. Access is via clipped flaps with a handle **A**.

Storage drawer



It is located under the driver's seat (manual adjustment).

Opening

- ☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it.

Do not place heavy objects in the drawers.

5

Rear multimedia



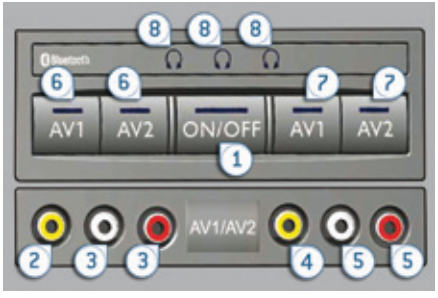
This multimedia system allows rear passengers to connect one or two external portable systems (audio or video player, games consoles, DVD player...). The sound is played through two Bluetooth® wireless headphone sets, while the video content is displayed in two 7-inch screens built into the backs of the front seat head restraints.

This system operates only with the engine running.

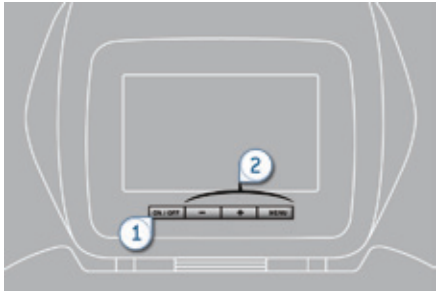
Description

The pack includes:

- the connection and control panel fitted on the rear face of the centre console,
- two 7-inch screens built into the front head restraints (with protective covers),
- two wireless Bluetooth technology headphone sets with rechargeable batteries,
- a 12 V charger with two outlets allowing the simultaneous charging of two headphones.



1. Power switch
2. AV1 video input (yellow RCA socket)
3. Stereo audio input A (red and white RCA sockets)
4. AV2 video input (yellow RCA socket)
5. Stereo audio input B (red and white RCA sockets)
6. Selection of display in the left hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
7. Selection of display in the right hand screen (AV1 or AV2)
8. Connection indicator lamps for the Bluetooth audio headphones (blue)

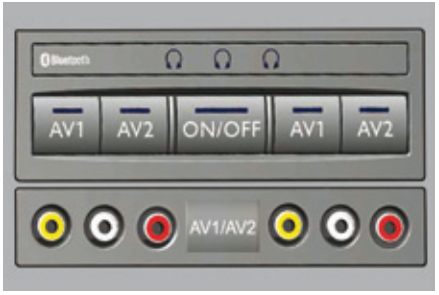


1. Screen power switch
2. Display adjustment buttons



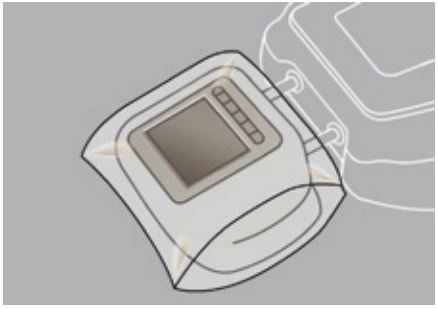
Each headphone set has a switch, a connection indicator lamp (blue) and a channel selector (A or B).

Operation



- With the engine running, connect your portable system to the RCA connectors (e.g. with AV1 on the left).
- Press the switch on the control panel, the indicator lamp comes on and the AV1 indicator lamps come on.
- Make a long press on the switch, its indicator lamp flashes in blue.
- Make a long press on the control panel switch, the pairing with the headphone set is complete when the blue indicator lamps on the headphones and on the system are on continuously.
- Repeat the operation for the other headphone set.
- Press the screen switch if you have a video source.
- Start playing your portable system.
- It is possible at any time to modify the source for the video display (using button **6** or **7** on the control panel: the indicator lamp for the source selected comes on) as well as the audio channel (using the selector on the headphones).

! The Multimedia system allows the connection of a third Bluetooth headphone set, not supplied.



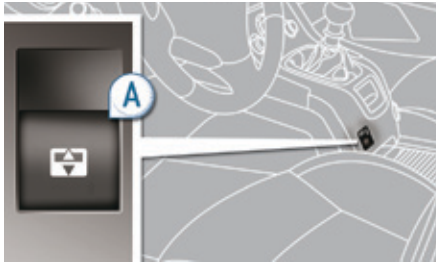
i If your seat is in the table position, position a cover to avoid damaging the screen.
These covers also conceal each screen.

Panoramic sunroof

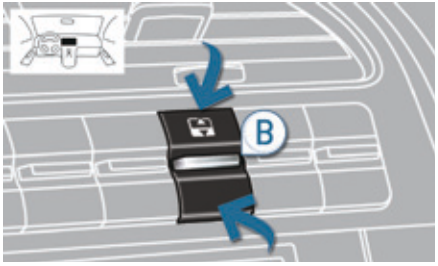
It has a blind that can be used to improve temperature and noise related comfort in the passenger compartment.

Motorised blind

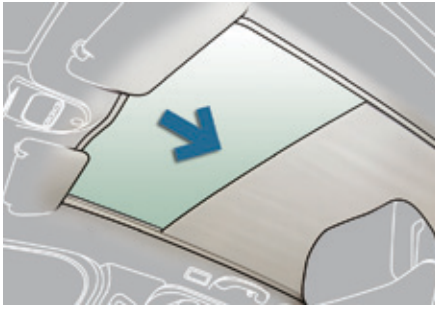
Depending on version, the blind is opened and closed using:
- button **A** on the centre console,
- or button **B** on the dashboard.



With button **A**:
- pull the control to open the blind,
- push the control to close the blind.



With button **B**:
- press at the top to open the blind,
- press at the bottom to close the blind.



Manual mode

Maintaining pressure on the control opens or closes the blind: movement stops if you release the control. Pressure on the control in the opposite direction reverses the movement.

The control is operational with the ignition on and for 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Automatic mode

Pressing and releasing the control opens or closes the blind completely. Pressing again stops the movement.

Safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode and at the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing it stops and moves back slightly.
Reinitialisation: after reconnecting the battery or in the event of a fault while the blind is moving, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully closed or open.
- ☞ Continue to press for at least 3 seconds. A slight movement of the blind will then be noticeable, confirming the reinitialisation.

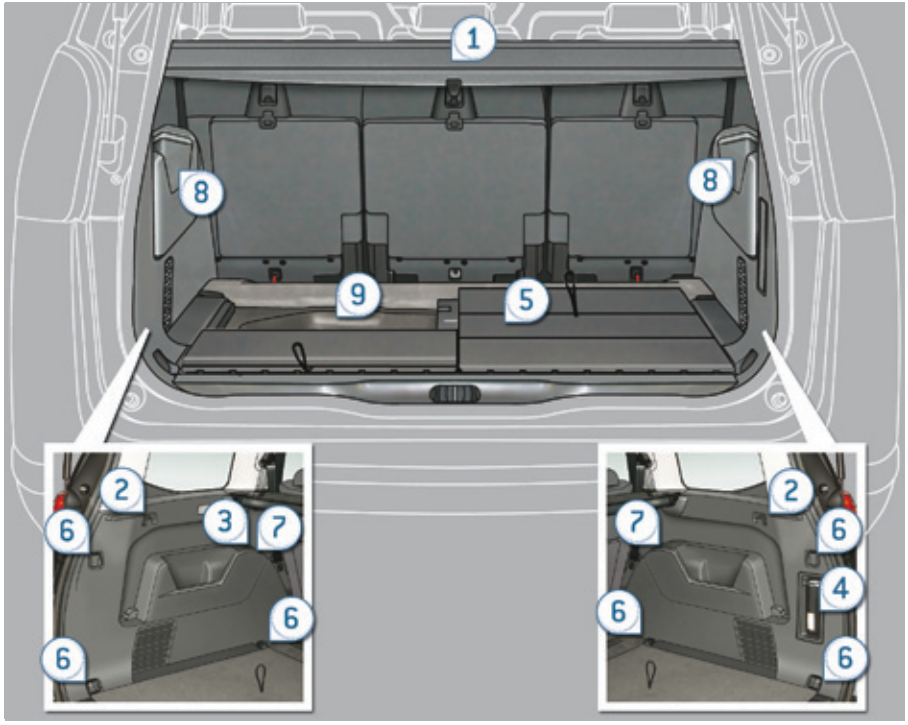
If the blind opens on its own while closing, and immediately after it stops.

- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully open.
- ☞ Operate the control until the blind is fully closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

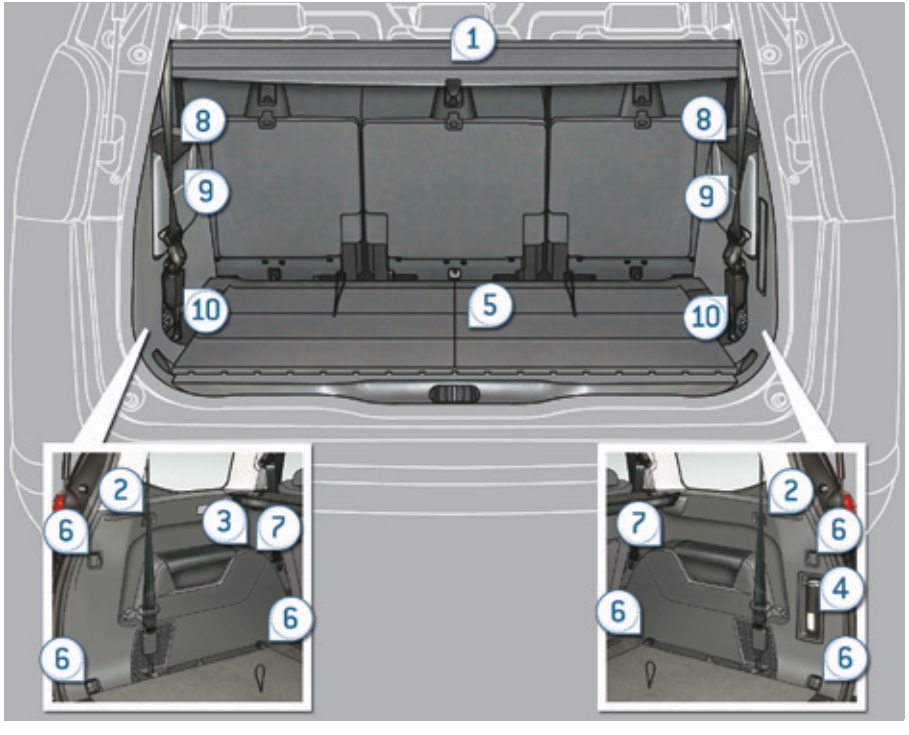
If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind.
When the driver operates the blind control, they must ensure that nothing and no one is preventing the correct closing of the blind.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the blind.

Boot fittings (5 seat version)



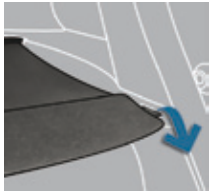
1. **Load space cover**
2. **Hooks**
3. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
4. **Torch**
5. **Concertina boards**
6. **Stowing rings on the floor**
7. **Cup holder**
8. **Storage compartments or audio amplifier**
9. **Storage compartment under the floor**

Boot fittings (7 seat version)



1. **Load space cover**
2. **Hooks**
3. **12 V accessory socket (120 W)**
4. **Torch**
5. **Concertina boards**
6. **Stowing rings on the floor**
7. **Cup holder**
8. **Armrests**
9. **Storage compartments or audio amplifier**
10. **3rd row seat belt buckles**

Roller load space cover





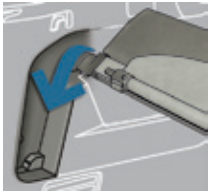
To remove the load space cover:

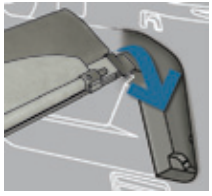
- ☞ remove the load space cover guides from the rails on the boot pillars,
- ☞ reel in the load space cover in its roller,





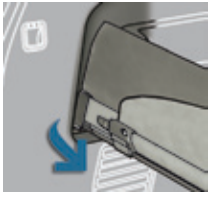
- ☞ pivot the ends of the roller upwards to release it,
- ☞ remove the roller from its support.





To store the load space cover, roller uppermost and flap facing towards the inside of the vehicle:

- ☞ place the right-hand end in its housing,
- ☞ slide the left-hand end into the guide then into its housing,





- ☞ secure the assembly by pivoting the ends downwards.



To install the load space cover:

- ☞ position one of the ends of the roller in its support,
- ☞ insert the second end in its support,
- ☞ pivot the ends of the roller downwards to secure it,
- ☞ reel out the load space cover to the boot pillars,
- ☞ insert the load space screen guides in the rails on the boot pillars.

! If you use the 3rd row seats (7 seat version), it is essential to store the roller in its housing.

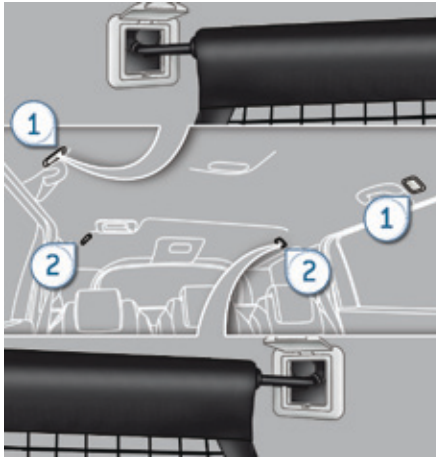
i The roller has two rings for fixing the luggage retaining net depending on its location.

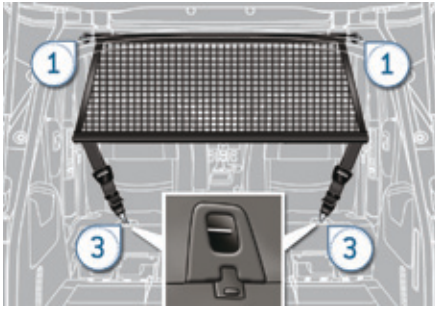
High load retaining net*

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.
- behind the rear seats (row 2).

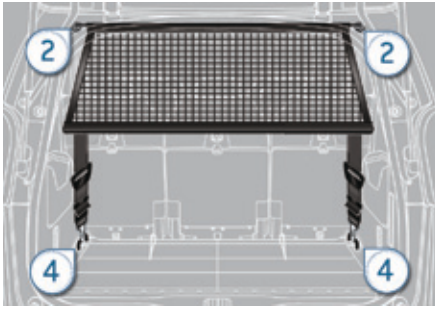
i When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.





To use it in row 1:

- ☞ fold the rear seats,
- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ slacken the straps fully,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding Top Tether ring **3** (located on the back of the folded rear side seats),
- ☞ tighten the straps,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.



To use it in row 2:

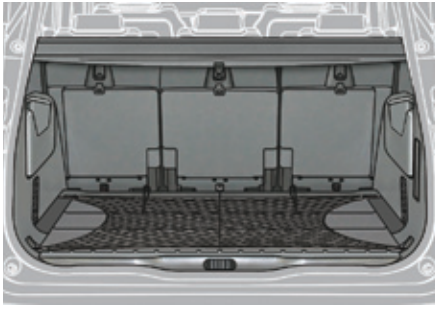
- ☞ roll up or remove the load space screen,
- ☞ open the covers of the upper fixings **2**,
- ☞ unroll the high load retaining net,
- ☞ position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **2**, then do the same with the other end,
- ☞ fix the snap hook of each of the straps in the corresponding stowing ring **4**,
- ☞ tighten the straps,
- ☞ check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

* If your vehicle is equipped with this.

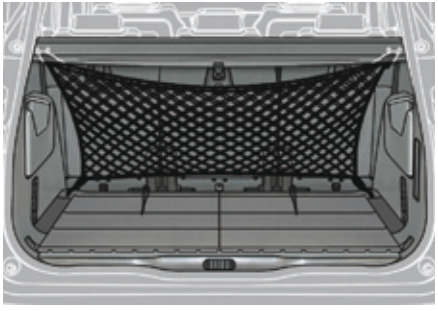
Luggage retaining net

Hooked onto the stowing rings on the floor and/or on the load space cover roller, the luggage retaining net available as an accessory enables you to secure your luggage.

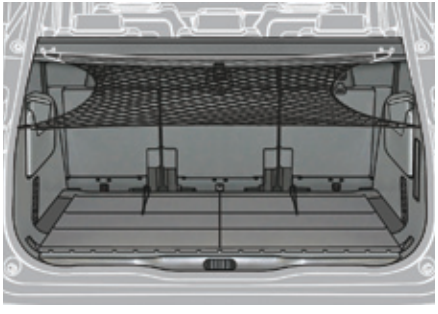
There are 4 possible positions:



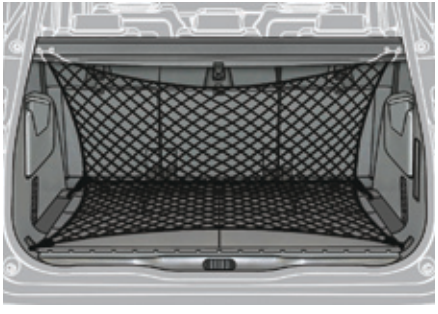
- flat at the bottom of the boot,



- vertical at the back of the rear seats,

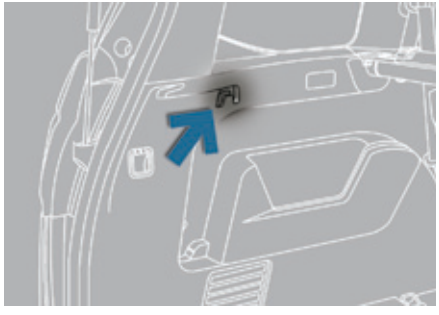


- horizontal, level with the load space cover,



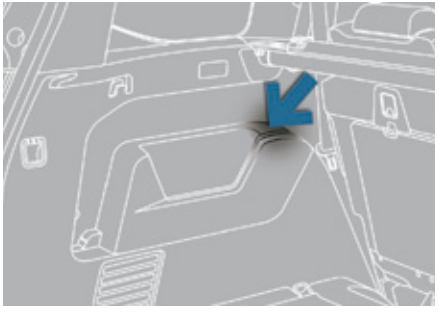
- flat at the bottom of the boot and vertical at the back of the rear seats.

Hooks



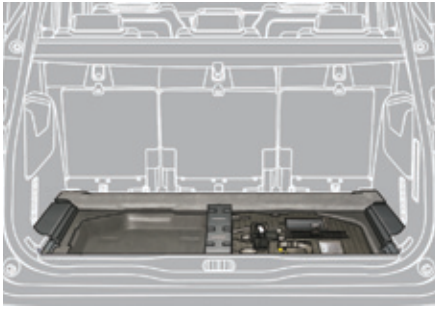
The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Storage box (5 seat version)



☞ Raise the concertina board to gain access to the storage box.

Depending on the configuration, this has areas for storing:

- a box of spare bulbs,
- a first aid kit,
- a tyre repair kit,
- two warning triangles,
- ...

Torch

This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to illuminate the boot or as a torch.

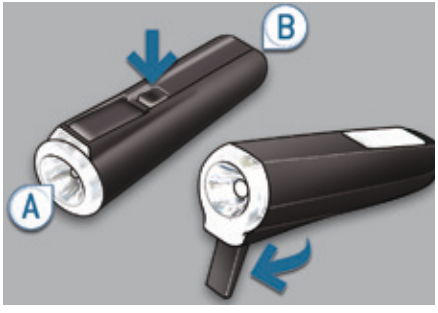
For the boot lighting function, refer to the "Visibility" section.



Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.
It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

Observe the polarities when fitting the batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal single-use batteries.



Use

- Extract the torch from its location pulling the side of the torch **A**.
- Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the narrow part **B**.
  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

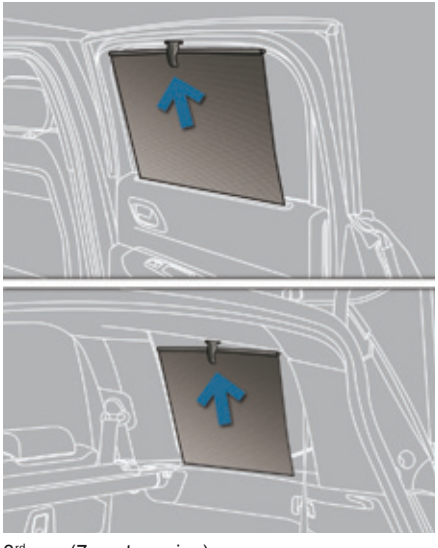
It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Rear side blinds

Fitted on the rear windows, these protect your young children from the sun.

- Pull the blind by the central tab.

2nd row



3rd row (7 seat version)

- Position the blind attachment on the hook.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of PEUGEOT main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **outer rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Child seat in the front



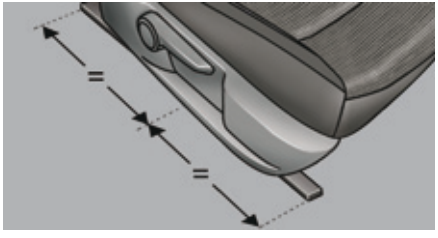
"Rearward facing"

When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.



"Forward facing"

When a "rearward-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened. Leave the passenger's airbag active.



Passenger seat in the fully back and highest position.

Ensure that the seat belt is properly tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger's seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

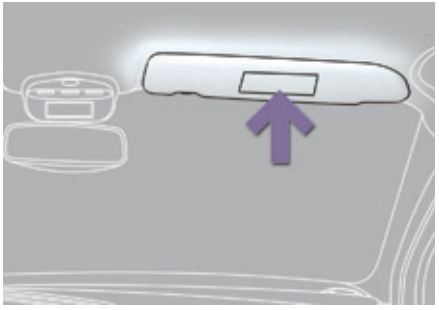
! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



Passenger airbag OFF







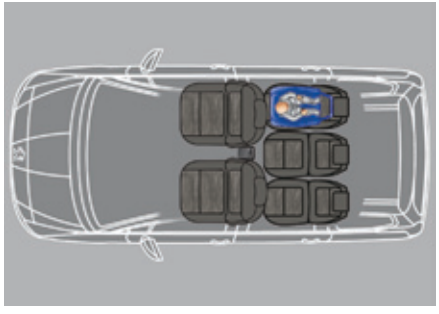
i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage “seljaga sõidusuunas“ lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l’arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l’ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

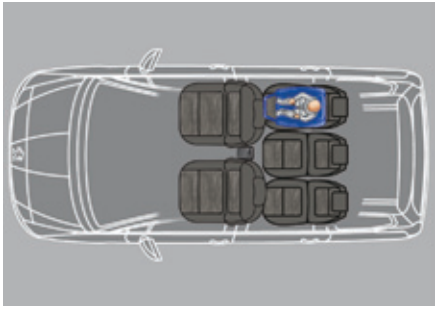
Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



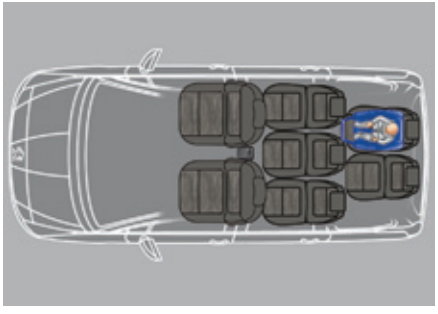
When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Seats in the 3rd row

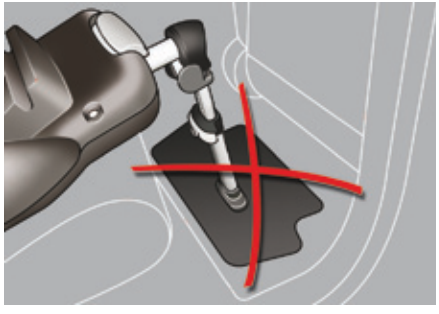


When a child seat is installed **on a 3rd row passenger seat**, move the 2nd row seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the child seat and the legs of the child do not touch the 2nd row seat.
A child seat with a stay must never be installed on a **3rd row passenger seat**.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

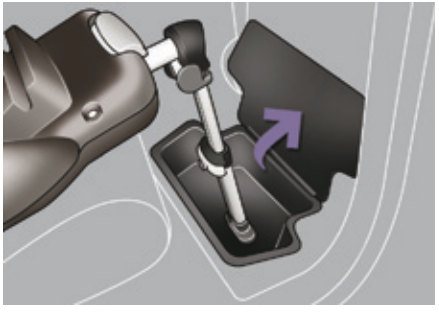
Installing a child seat with a support leg

Care must be taken when installing a child seat with a support leg in the vehicle. In particular you should look for the presence of a storage compartment below the rear seat footwells.



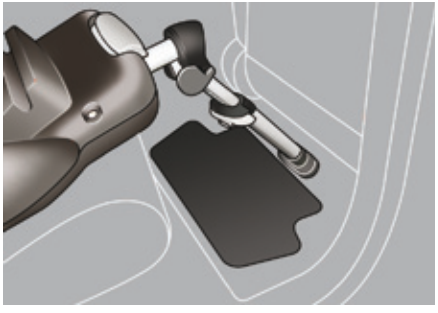
! Do not place the support leg on the storage compartment cover; it might break in a serious impact. Where the adjustments of the support leg allow it, we suggest two other possibilities for installation.
The centre rear seat does not have a storage compartment below the footwell. You can therefore easily fit a child seat with a support leg, whether installed with the Isofix mountings or using the 3 point seat belt.

At the bottom of the storage compartment



If the support leg is long enough, you can adjust it so that it contact the bottom of the storage compartment. Remove all objects from the storage compartment before installing the support leg.

Away from the storage compartment area



Another possibility, if the support leg is long enough and can be inclined sufficiently (always by following the recommendations given in the installation instructions for the child seat), is to position the support leg so that it contacts the floor away from the storage compartment. Adjust the longitudinal position of the front or rear seat to obtain a satisfactory position for the support leg away from the storage compartment.

! If you cannot fit the support leg in the way described in one of these two procedures, you should not fit a child seat with support leg to this seat.

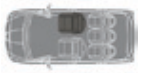
Child seats recommended by PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**	
	**L1** "RÖMER/BRITAX Baby-Safe Plus". Installed in the rearward-facing position.		**L2** "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX".
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L5** "KLIPPAN Optima". From the age of approximately 6 years (22 kg), the booster is used on its own.		**L6** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be secured using the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Installing child seats using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in accordance with the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Weight of the child and indicative age				
Seat	**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
5 seats (2 rows)				
Outer rear seats **(d)** **(e)** 	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat **(d)** **(e)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.

b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

d: to install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

e: to install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest upright.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

U (R): same as **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

L: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (according to country).

X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seating position. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Seat	Weight of the child and indicative age **Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to approx 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) 1 to 3 years approx	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) 3 to 6 years approx	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) 6 to 10 years approx
Front passenger seat **(c)** with height adjuster 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Front passenger seat **(c)** without height adjuster	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
7 seats (3 rows)				
Outer rear seats 2nd row **(d)** **(e)** 	**U***	**U***	**U***	**U***
Centre rear seat 2nd row **(d)** **(e)** 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Rear seats 3rd row 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

a: universal child seat, child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using a seat belt.

b: group 0, from birth to 10 kg. Shells seats and baby carriers cannot be installed in the front passenger seat.

c: consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

d: To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.

e: To install a child seat on a rear seat, "rearward facing" or "forward facing", adjust the rear seat to the fully back position, with the backrest upright.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

U (R): same as **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

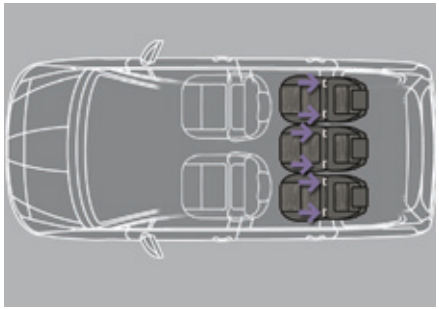
L-: only the child seats indicated can be installed on the seat concerned (according to country).

X: seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

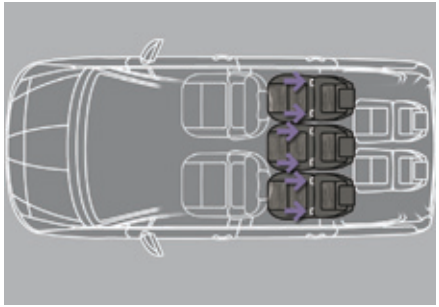
! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

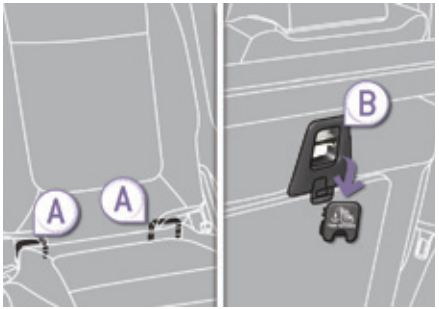
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulations**.
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



5 seats



7 seats



The ISOFIX mountings are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,
- a ring **B**, located under a cover on the back of the top of the seat backrest, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap. Its position is indicated by a marking.

Located on the back of the seat backrest, the top tether is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This device limits forward tipping of the child seat, in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** (or top tether) which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it after the child seat has been removed),
- remove the **TOP TETHER** cover by pulling at its cut-out,
- pass the child seat strap behind the seat backrest, centred between the holes for the head restraint rods,
- secure the upper strap fixing to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

ISOFIX child seat

Recommended by PEUGEOT and approved for your vehicle

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Observe strictly the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

For information on the possibilities for fitting ISOFIX child seats to your vehicle, refer to the table of seating positions.

ISOFIX child seat with TOP TETHER
RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
 Installed only in the "forward facing" position. Is attached to the rings **A**, as well as the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.
Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.
Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.

Seating positions for installing ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter between **A** and **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**"rearwards-facing"**			**"rearwards-facing"**		**"forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		
5 seats (2 rows)										
Outer rear seats 	**IL-SU***		**IL-SU***			**IL-SU***		**IUF* IL-SU***		
Centre rear seat 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **stay** (or drop down leg). Refer to the section on "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the top belt to the upper ring of an ISOFIX seating position.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with a top belt or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the top belt, refer to the section on "ISOFIX mountings".

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

	Weight of the child / indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Shell**		**"rearwards-facing"**			**"rearwards-facing"**		**"forwards-facing"**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	**X**		**X**			**X**		**X**		
7 seats (3 rows)										
Outer rear seats 2nd row 	**IL-SU***		**IL-SU***			**IL-SU***		**IUF * IL-SU***		
Centre rear seat 2nd row 	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Rear seats 3rd row 	Not Isofix									

* Precautions are required when fitting a child seat with a **support leg**. Refer to the section on "Installing a child seat with a support leg" for more information.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the top belt to the upper ring of an ISOFIX seating position.

IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with a top belt or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a shell seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the top belt, refer to the section on "ISOFIX mountings".

X: seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or shell for the weight group indicated.

Recommendations

Child seats

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Check that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.
For the installation of a child seat using a seat belt, ensure that this is well tensioned on the child seat and that it is holding the child seat firmly against the seat of your vehicle. If your front passenger seat is adjustable, move it forward if necessary.
At the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the feet of a child seated in a forward facing child seat.

For this, move the front seat forward and if necessary straighten its backrest.

For optimum installation of the "forward facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, or in contact if possible
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on the passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stowed or attached securely so that it is not thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.
Refit the head restraint as soon as the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying a child on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster cushion

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

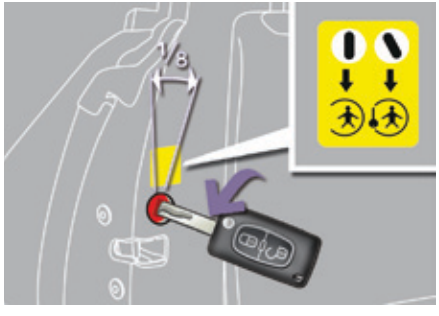
- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key as shown in the label on the door. **Check that the lock is on**.

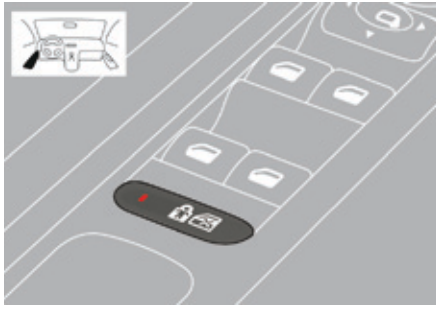
Unlocking

☞ Turn the red control one eighth of a turn using the ignition key.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

Switching on



☞ With the ignition on, press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is on.
This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is switched off.
It is still possible to open the doors from the outside and operate the rear electric windows from the driver's control panel.

Switching off

☞ With the ignition on, press this button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by a message to confirm that the child lock is off.
This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is switched off.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Direction indicators



☞ Lower the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the left.

☞ Raise the lighting control stalk fully when moving to the right.

i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

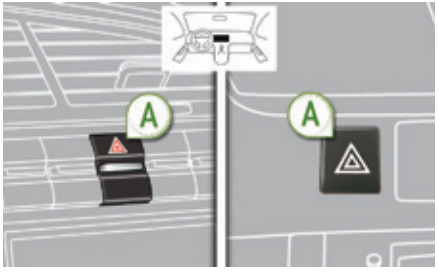
Three flashes

Move the stalk briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash 3 times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful for changing lane on fast roads.

Hazard warning lamps

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



☞ Tilt or press button **A**, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



☞ Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

7

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) incorporating the following systems:

- the anti-lock braking system (ABS) and the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- the emergency braking assistance,
- the anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- the dynamic stability control (DSC).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and provides improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered according to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Snow driving assistance (Intelligent Traction Control)

Your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **Intelligent Traction Control**.
This automatic system continuously checks for situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, **Intelligent Traction Control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control.
In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud…), it can be useful to temporarily deactivate the **dynamic stability control and wheel anti-slip** systems to allow a degree of wheel spin and so recover grip.
It is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.
Snow tyres are strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Operation

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

When this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the ABS, which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

When this warning lamp comes on, coupled with the **STOP** warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, it indicates that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD), which could cause loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

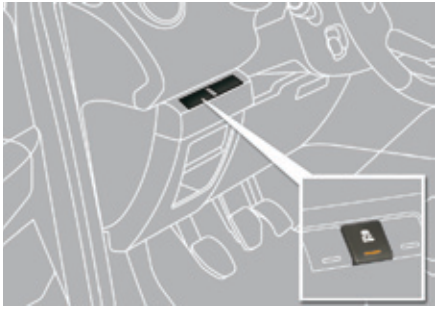
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), make sure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

In emergency braking, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation if the engine and brakes.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground...), it may be advisable to deactivate the DSC and ASR, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.

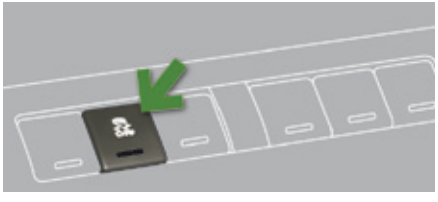


☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
The DSC and ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine and on the brakes in the event of a involuntary change of trajectory.

Reactivation

The systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).
Below 30 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate them manually:



☞ Press this button again.

Operating fault

Illumination of this warning lamp and the lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicate a fault with the system.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

DSC/ASR

The DSC and ASR systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep the DSC and ASR systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.
To benefit in full from the effectiveness of the DSC and ASR systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

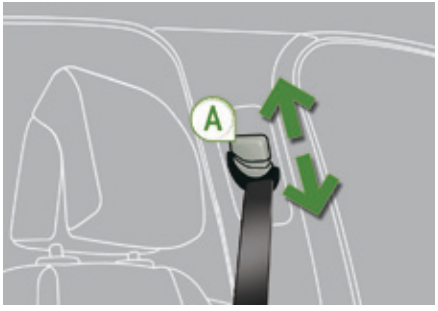


Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.



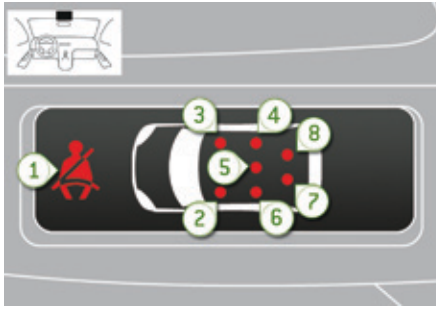
Height adjustment

- ☞ To adjust the anchorage point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it until you find a notch.

Front seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

7 seat version

7. 3rd row rear left seat belt warning lamp
8. 3rd row rear right seat belt warning lamp.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter (with the exception of the centre rear seat).

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

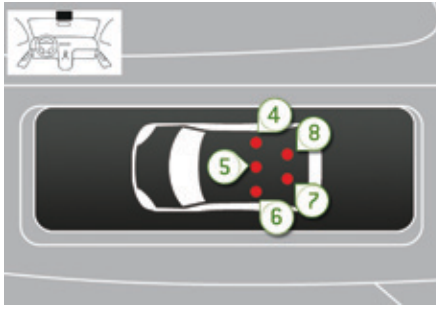
- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp

This warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display

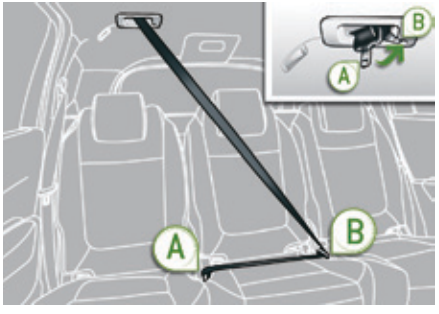


When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4** to **8** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5**, **6**, **7** or **8** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

i To prevent movement of the rear side seat belts in the 2nd row, slide the straps into the guides provided for this purpose.

2nd row rear centre seat belt

The seat belt for the rear centre seat of the 2nd row is incorporated at the rear right of the roof.



Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** in the right-hand buckle.
- Insert the tongue **B** in the left-hand buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.

Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **B**, then on the buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **B**, then **A** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the roof.

3rd row rear seat belts (7 seat version)

The seat belts for the rear seats of the 3rd row are incorporated at the corner of the corresponding boot pillar and of the roof.



Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **C** in the buckle, on the boot side trim side.
- Insert the tongue **D** in the opposite buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.

Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **D**, then on the buckle **C**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and the tongues **D** and **C**.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information, refer to the "Child seats" section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

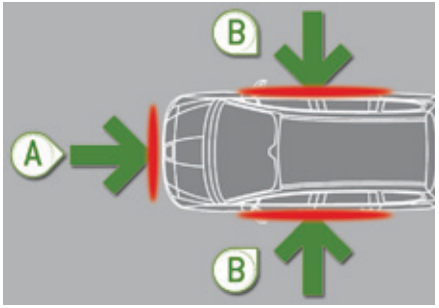
Airbags

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions.
The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the centre rear passenger).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! **The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**
This equipment will only deploy once.
If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

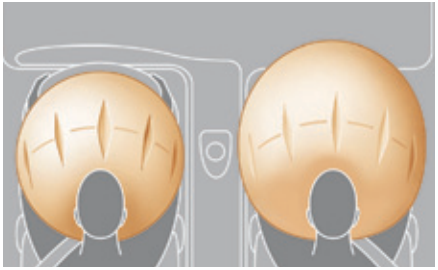


A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- ☞ Then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



On switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display. It stays on until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the "rearward facing" child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

When switching the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, to signal that the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Lateral airbags

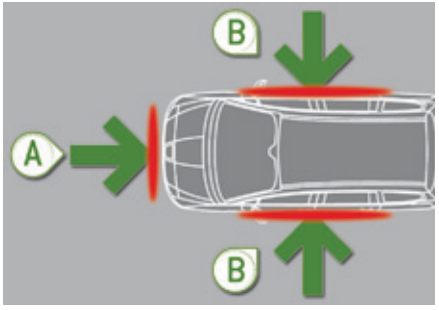
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the front, in the outer side of the seat back frame.



Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not deployed.

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Refer to the "Accessories" section.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Starting-switching off the engine

Anti-theft protection

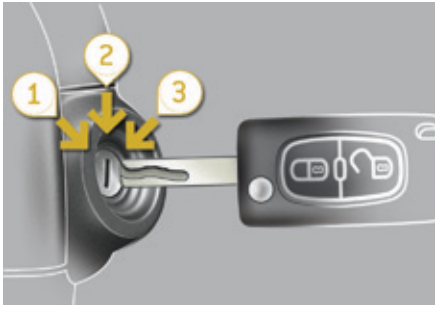
Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised for engine starting to be authorised.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

! In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

i Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key.
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged.
Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),
  or
- press the brake pedal firmly (electronic or automatic gearbox),
- insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.
if the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. if the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: You risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death.
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.
Never drive with the parking brake applied: risk of overheating and damage to the braking system.
Do not park or leave the engine running with the vehicle stationary in areas where flammable materials (dry grass, dead leaves) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system: risk of fire.
Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running. If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **P** or **N**.

Switching off the engine

☞ Stop the vehicle.
☞ With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.

! In "Stop" mode of Stop & Start, don't forget to switch off the ignition.

☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

i For more information, refer to the "Practical information" section, under "Energy economy mode".

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

i **Key left in the "Ignition on" position**

On opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake combines 2 operational modes:

- **Automatic application/release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),
- **Manual application/release**
  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

Programming the mode

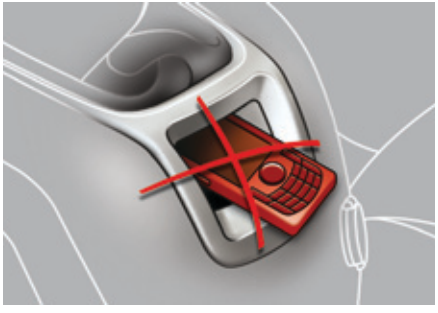
Depending on the country of registration of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation of this function is possible by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the brake is not applied.

Deactivation is recommended in particularly cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Refer to the "Manual release" paragraph.



Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone, ...) behind the electric brake control.

Manual application



With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** on the control lever **A**.
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Handbrake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a beep is heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on, not flashing.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** the control lever **A**.
Full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Handbrake off".



If you pull the control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. It is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Handbrake on" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on is variable in its effect (e.g. on a ferry, in a lorry, during towing).

i In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off.**

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Handbrake on".

An audible signal will confirm to you the application/ release of your electric parking brake.

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on (not flashing). Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Electronic gearbox:** select position **A**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox:** select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and of the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Handbrake off".

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

To immobilise the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** on control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the warning lamp **P** in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Handbrake on".

When the driver's door is opened, an audible signal heard and a message is displayed if the parking brake has not been applied, unless the selector lever is in position **P** (Park) in the case of an automatic gearbox.

Label on the door panel



Emergency braking

! Before leaving the vehicle, check that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on, not flashing.

Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.
To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamp in the control lever **A** and the warning lamp in the instrument panel going off and the display of the message "Handbrake off".
If a parking brake fault occurs **while applied** or if the battery runs flat, an emergency release is always possible.



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) **a continuous pull on the control lever A will stop the vehicle**.
The dynamic stability control (DSC) provides stability during emergency braking.
If there is a fault with the emergency braking, one of the following messages will be displayed:
- "Parking brake faulty".
- "Parking brake control faulty".

If a failure of the DSC system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, then braking stability is not guaranteed.
In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull release" actions on control lever **A**.

! The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This system only operates when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- in particular conditions on a slope,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a momentarily when you release the brake pedal:
- provided you are in first gear or neutral on a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in position **A** or **M** on an electronic gearbox,
- provided you are in position **D** or **M** on an automatic gearbox.

! Do not exit the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to exit the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp (and the warning lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake) are on fixed (not flashing).



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held momentarily when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake fault warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

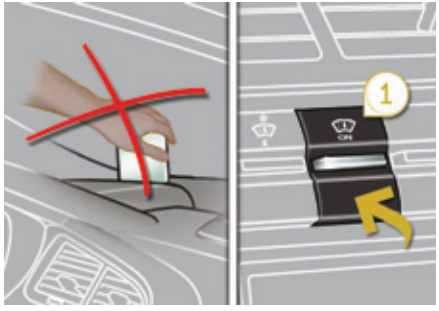
Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. ! To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ Immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ Pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ Switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ Switch on the ignition. ☞ Pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake control fault - auto parking brake activated**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Battery fault 	- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the two chocks under the wheels). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

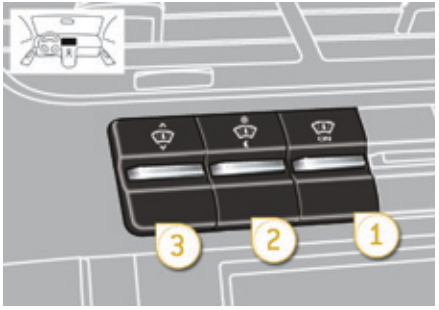
Head-up display



System which projects various information onto a transparent strip in the field of vision of the driver so that they do not have to take their eyes off the road.
This system operates when the engine is running and the settings are stored when the ignition is switched off.



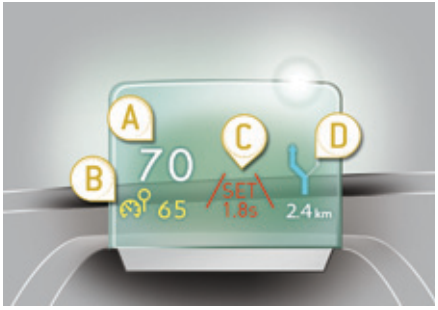
Buttons



1. Head-up display on / off.
2. Brightness adjustment.
3. Display height adjustment.

The strip is activated by pressing one of the buttons.

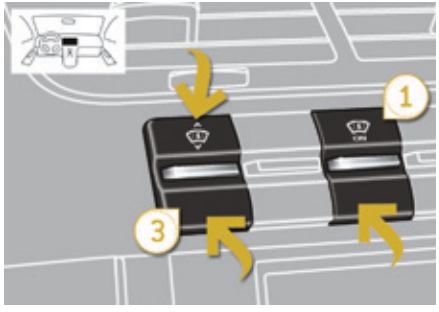
Displays during operation



Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:

- **A.** The speed of your vehicle.
- **B.** Cruise control/speed limiter information.
- **C.** "Distance alert" information (depending on version).
- **D.** Navigation information (depending on version).
  For more information on the navigation system, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Activation / Deactivation

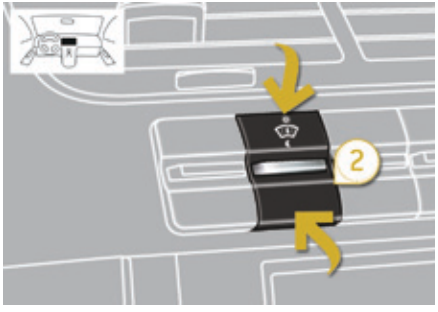


☞ With the engine running, press button **1**. The activated/deactivated status when the engine was switched off is retained when the engine is switched on again.

Height adjustment

☞ With the engine running, adjust the display to the required height using button **3**:
- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment



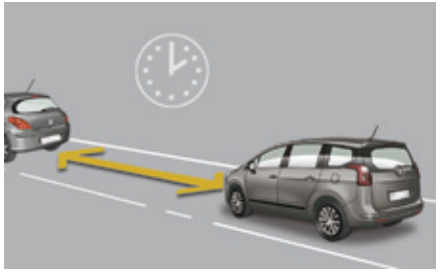
☞ With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information using button **2**:
- up to increase the brightness,
- down to decrease the brightness.

! We recommend that adjustments are only made using these buttons when the vehicle is stationary.
When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the transparent strip (or on its cover) to avoid blocking the strip output and preventing its correct operation.

i In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, ...) the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Certain glasses (sunglasses, spectacles or polarised lenses) may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the transparent strip, which is made of organic glass, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth or detergent or solvent products as these could scratch the strip or damage the anti-reflection coating.

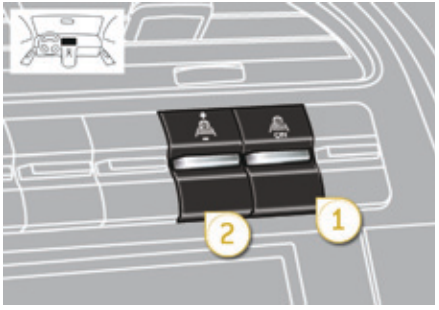
Distance alert*

Driving aid which informs the driver of the time interval (in seconds) separating them from the vehicle in front when the driving conditions are stable.
It does not detect stationary vehicles and does not itself take **any action** on your vehicle's controls.



For the safety time to be observed, refer to the current legislation or highway code recommendations in your country.
The system operates when the speed of your vehicle is higher than 45 mph (70 km/h) and below 90 mph (150 km/h).
It has a programmable visual alert which remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.
This system is a driving aid and cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of vigilance on the part of the driver.

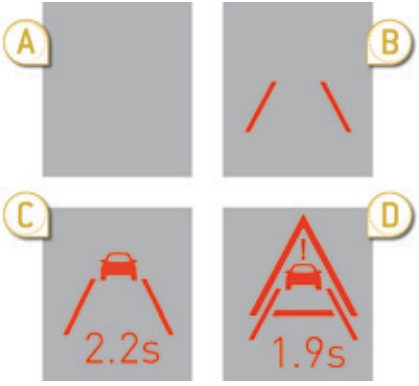
Buttons



1. On / off.
2. Alert value increase (+) / decrease (-).

* Depending on version

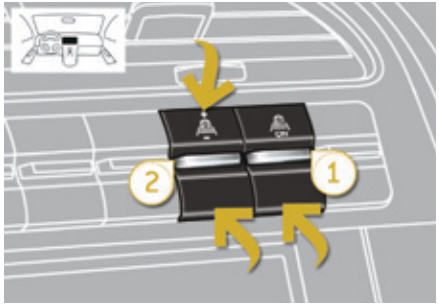
Displays during operation



The information is grouped together in the head-up display.
Once the system has been activated:

A. The speed of your vehicle is outside the operating range.
B. Your vehicle is within the operating range but no vehicle has been detected.
C. The vehicle in front of you has been detected.
The current time separating you from this vehicle is displayed permanently.
D. The time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed alert value (it flashes).

Activation



☞ Press button **1**, the indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated but will only operate from 45 mph (70 km/h).

Programming the alert value

☞ Select the alert value required using button **2**, in steps of 0.1 second:
- up to increase: "+",
- down to decrease: "-".

Example with a value of 2 seconds:



The alert value can be programmed to between 0.9 second and 2.5 seconds.
The visual alert can be deactivated by programming a value of 0 second.

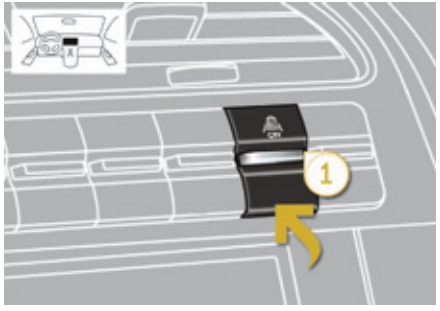
Alert



When the time (in seconds) between your vehicle and the vehicle in front is less than the programmed time (alert value), a visual alert flashes.

! A safety time of 2 seconds is recommended in normal driving conditions (correct traction and speed) to avoid a collision in the event of emergency braking.

Deactivation



☞ Press button **1** to deactivate the system, the indicator lamp goes off.

Reactivation

☞ Press button **1** again to reactivate the system.
The last value programmed is retained and the indicator lamp comes on.

Operating limits

The system switches to standby automatically if the sensor does not detect the vehicle in front correctly (very difficult weather conditions, sensor out of adjustment, ...). A message is displayed in the multifunction screen.
The vehicle being followed may not be detected in certain conditions such as, for example:

- when turning,
- when changing lane,
- when the vehicle in front is either too far ahead (maximum range of the sensor: 100 m) or stationary (in a traffic jam, ...),

When the vehicle being followed is much too near (time between the two vehicles less than 0.5 seconds), the display remains fixed at 0.5 seconds.

! If the indicator lamp in button **1** flashes, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
This system is not an anti-collision radar and it does not act of the movement of your vehicle. It provides information but cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of vigilance on the part of the driver.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.
When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect unless it is pressed firmly, which permits temporary exceeding of the programmed speed.
To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed by releasing the accelerator.

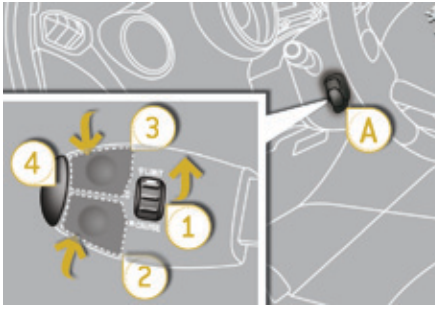
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

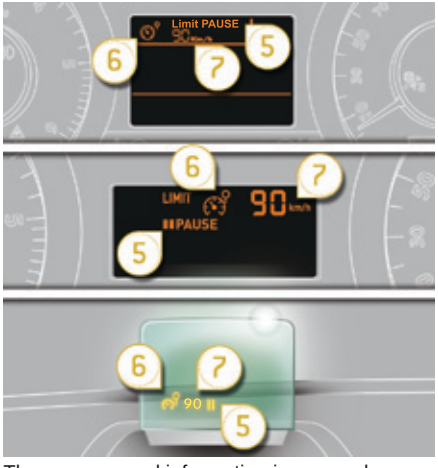
Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Programmed value decrease button
3. Programmed value increase button
4. Speed limiter on / off button

Displays in the instrument panel

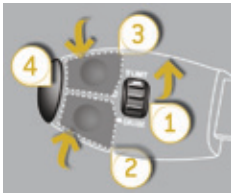


The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on / off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming





☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.



☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



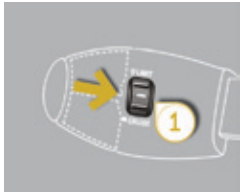
☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed



Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.
Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault



In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engagement of:

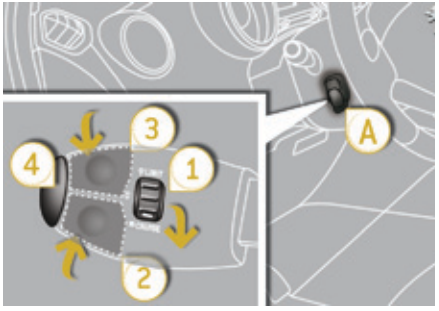
- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear in sequential mode on an electronic or automatic gearbox,
- position **A** on an electronic gearbox or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the DSC/ASR systems for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls

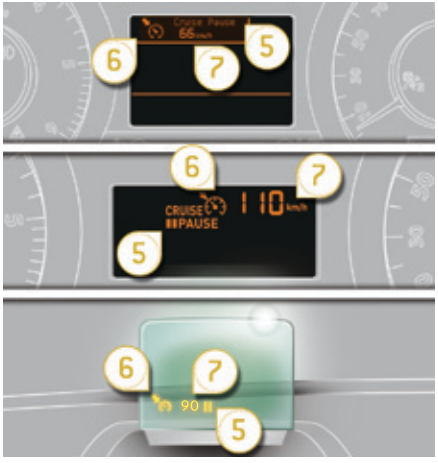


The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial
2. Speed programming / programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming / programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control off / resume button

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel

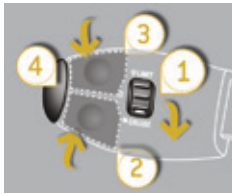


The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off / resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value

This information also appears in the head-up display.
For more information, refer to the "Head-up display" section.

Programming





☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF/Pause).



☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.



☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF/Pause).



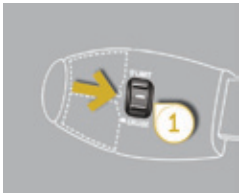
☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed



Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.
Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Return to normal driving



☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault



In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.
On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear



☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

! When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, drive at walking speed.

Electronic gearbox

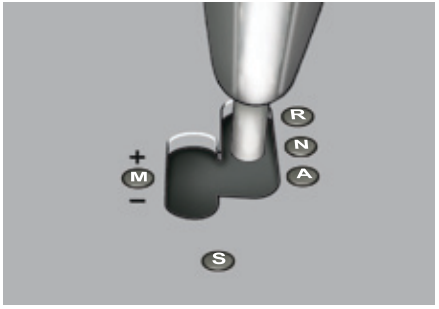
Six-speed electronic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

Three driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** mode for sequential changing of the gears by the driver,
- **auto sequential** mode to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

A **Sport** function is available in automatic or sequential mode for a more dynamic style of driving.

Gear lever



R. Reverse

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the lever upwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automatic mode.

☞ Move the lever downwards to select this mode.

M. + / - Manual mode with manual sequential changing of the gears.

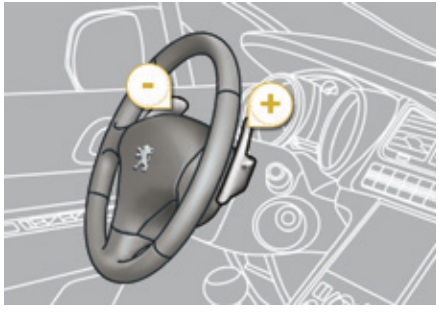
☞ Move the lever downwards then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push the lever forwards to change up a gear,
- or pull the lever rearwards to change down a gear.

S. Sport setting.

☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate this function.

Steering mounted controls



+. Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or engage or disengage reverse gear.

Displays in the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

When you move the lever, the symbol corresponding to its position is displayed in the instrument panel.

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automatic mode is selected. It goes off on changing to sequential mode.

S. Sport (Sport setting)

☞ Place your **foot on the brake** when this warning lamp flashes (e.g.: when starting the engine).

i There is an audible signal when reverse gear is engaged.

Moving off

☞ Select position **N**.

☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.

☞ Start the engine.

i If the engine does not start:

- If **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the lever to position **A** then to position **N**.
- If the message "**Foot on brake**" is displayed, press the brake pedal firmly.

☞ Keep your foot on the brake pedal, move the gear lever to position **A** or **M** to go forwards, or **R** to go backwards.

☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, you can then move off.

☞ The parking brake is released automatically, otherwise release it manually.



AUTO and **1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.

! If position **R**, **A** or **M** is selected, even with the engine at idle, if the brakes are released the vehicle moves without any action on the accelerator. Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance on the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **N**.

Sequential mode

☞ When the vehicle has moved off, select position **M** to change to sequential mode.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.
It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.
When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow vehicle to pull away in the correct gear.

i At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. The **Foot on brake** warning lamp may flash in the instrument panel to prompt you to brake.
At high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp will flash and the gearbox will change to neutral automatically. To engage a gear again, return the lever to position **A** or **M**.

! On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.
Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

Automatic mode

☞ Following use of the sequential mode, select position **A** to return to the automatic mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox is then operating in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear in relation to the following parameters:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

"Auto sequential mode"

This mode enables you to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

☞ Operate the **+** or **-** steering mounted paddle.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** is still displayed in the instrument panel.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Sport setting

☞ Following selection of the sequential mode or automatic mode, press button **S** to activate the Sport setting which offers you a more dynamic style of driving.



S appears next to the gear engaged in the instrument panel screen.

☞ Press button **S** again to return to normal settings.

S is then cleared from the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox returns to normal mode automatically each time the ignition is switched off.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, it is essential that you apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

Operating fault



With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, this indicates a fault with the gearbox.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, it is essential to place the gear lever in neutral **N**.
Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

! It is essential to press the brake pedal when starting the engine.
When parking, is it essential to apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, whatever the circumstances.

! When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, drive at walking speed.

"Porsche Tiptronic System" automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.
Four driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Button "❄" **(snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.
M + / -. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.
☞ Press forwards to change up through the gears.
or
☞ Press rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

- With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
- Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

- With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- Select position **R**, **D** or **M**,
- Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

A message is displayed if you try to move the gear lever from position **P** without pressing the brake pedal.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

When driving through flooded roads or crossing a ford, drive at walking speed.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,

Example:
- You are in third gear.



- You press the accelerator pedal.



- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby:

- **with a manual gearbox,** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with the e-THP 165 version, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**, at speeds below 4 mph (6 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear selector in position **N**,
- **with an automatic gearbox,** vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or you put the gear selector in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It rests itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering...

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the key,
- the vehicle is stopped on a steep slope (up or down),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you fully depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you put the gear selector in position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you put the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

START mode is invoked automatically when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 18 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox, (2 mph (3 km/h) with the THP 165 version), 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed for control of a system.

In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.
This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by a message in the screen.

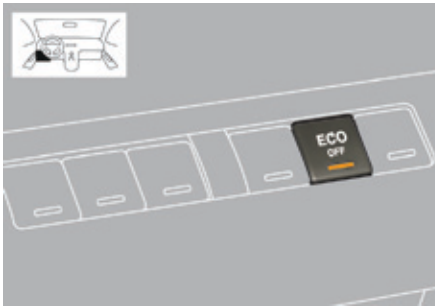
If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and a message in the screen.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key.

Operating fault



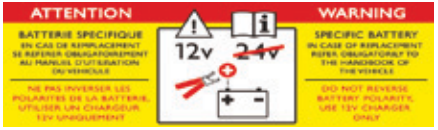
In the event of a fault with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes then comes on continuously.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall: all the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the key.

When driving on flooded roads or crossing a ford, switch off the Stop & Start and drive at walking speed.

Maintenance

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from PEUGEOT dealers).
Fitting a battery not listed by PEUGEOT introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.
To charge the battery, use a 12 V charger and observe the polarity.



The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. For any work on the system go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment required, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.
A pressure sensor is located in the valve of a each tyres (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section).
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.





In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

- ☞ If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).

i The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the "service" warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

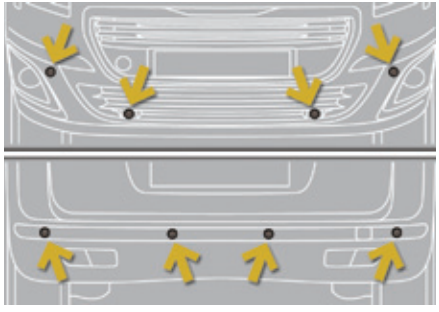
i This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

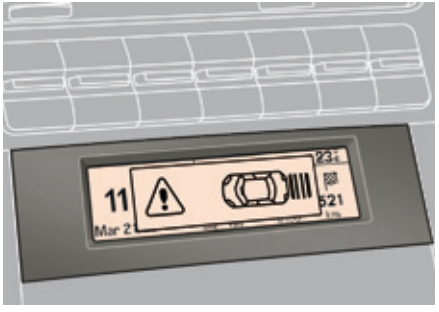
i Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

8

Visual and audible front and rear parking sensors



System consisting of four proximity sensors, installed in the front and/or rear bumper.
It detects any obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, barrier...) located behind the vehicle, however, it will not be able to detect obstacles located immediately below the bumper.



The parking sensors are **switched on**:
- by engaging reverse gear,
- at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear.

This is accompanied by an audible signal and display of the vehicle in the multifunction screen.



The proximity information is indicated by:
- an audible signal which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle,
- a graphic in the multifunction screen, with blocks which move closer to the vehicle.

The obstacle is located in relation to the emission of the audible signal by the speakers; front or rear and right or left.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous and/or the "Danger" symbol appears, depending on the multifunction screen version.

An object, such as a stake, a roadworks cone or any other similar object may be detected at the start of the manoeuvre but may no longer be detected when the vehicle moves nearer to it.

The parking sensors are **switched off**:
- when you exit reverse gear,
- when the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h) in forward gear,
- when the vehicle has been stationary for more than three seconds in forward gear.

The parking sensor system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Deactivation



☞ Press button **A**, the warning lamp comes on, the system is fully deactivated.

The system will be deactivated automatically when a trailer is being towed or when a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Reactivation

☞ Press button **A** again, the warning lamp switches off, the system is reactivated.

Operating fault

If an operating fault occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep), when reverse gear is engaged.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. When the vehicle is being driven at a speed below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sources of noise (motorcycles, lorries, pneumatic drills, ...) may trigger the parking sensor audible signals.

Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The colour image is provided in the navigation screen.

! This system is a driving aid that does not replace vigilance on the part of the driver, who must remain in control of the vehicle at all times.

i Clean the lens of the reversing camera regularly using a sponge and a soft cloth.
When cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, keep the end of the lance at least 30 cm from the camera lens.



The green lines represent the general direction of the vehicle.

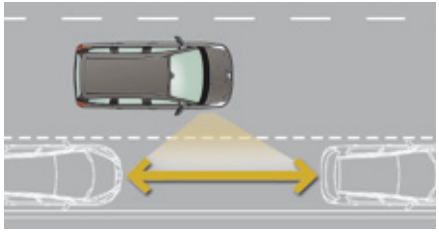
The red lines represent around 30 cm beyond the limit of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The blue lines represent the maximum turning circle.

i The lines displayed in the screen do not allow the position of the vehicle to be determined relative to tall obstacles (for example: vehicles nearby).
Some deformation of the image is normal.

Parking space sensors

After measuring the parking space available between two vehicles or obstacles, this system gives you information on:

- the possibility of fitting into a free space, depending on the dimensions of your vehicle and the distances needed for manoeuvring,
- the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre to be performed.



The system does not measure spaces which are clearly much smaller or larger than the size of the vehicle.

Displays in the instrument panel

The parking space sensor function warning lamp can have three different states:

- **off:** the function is not selected,
- **on fixed:** the function is selected but the conditions for measurement are not yet met (direction indicator not operating, speed too high) or the measurement phase has ended,
- **flashing:** measurement is in progress or the message is being displayed.



You can activate the "parking space sensor" function by pressing button **A.** The fixed illumination of the warning lamp indicates that the function is selected.

8

Operation

You have identified a parking space:

- ☞ Press button **A** to activate the function.
- ☞ Activate the direction indicator on the side where the space is to be measured.
- ☞ During the measuring, go forward the length of the space, at a speed less than 12 mph (approximately 20 km/h), to prepare for your manoeuvre.
  The system then measures the size of the space.
- ☞ The system informs you of the level of difficulty of the manoeuvre via a message in the multifunction screen accompanied by an audible signal.

The function displays the following types of message:

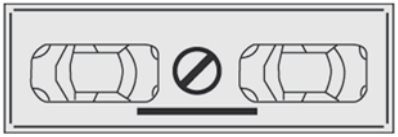
Parking possible



Parking difficult



Parking not advised



The function deactivates itself automatically:

- when you engage reverse gear,
- when you switch off the ignition,
- five minutes after activation of the function or after the last measurement operation,
- if the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 45 mph (approximately 70 km/h) for one minute.

! If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the parking space is too great, the system may not operate.

i
- The function remains available after each measurement and so can measure a number of places successively.
- In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, or by ice or snow.
- The parking space sensor function deactivates the front parking sensors during the space measuring phase when you are in forward gear.

If there is a malfunction, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



▶ **208 HYbrid FE, a technology demonstrator with exceptional characteristics: 1.9 l/100 km (148.7 mpg) and 0 to 100 km/h (0 to 62 mph) in 8 seconds.**

PEUGEOT & TOTAL,

A PARTNERSHIP TO DELIVER BETTER PERFORMANCE!

Innovation, the key to success

The TOTAL Research and Development and PEUGEOT teams work together to develop high quality lubricants that meet the requirements of PEUGEOT vehicles. For you, this is the assurance that the performance of your engine is optimised while also ensuring its durability.
The 208 HYbrid FE demonstrates the ability of PEUGEOT and TOTAL to develop innovative technologies and provide other ways of moving towards the future.

Reduced exhaust emissions, a true reality

TOTAL lubricants are formulated to optimise the efficiency of engines and the protection of the emissions post-treatment systems. It is important to observe the servicing recommendations made by PEUGEOT to assure correct operation.

9

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level



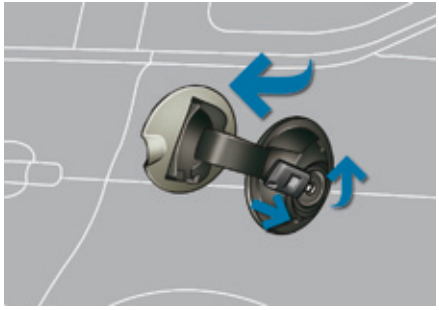
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. When the lamp first comes on, there is **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.
Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. When driving, this audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

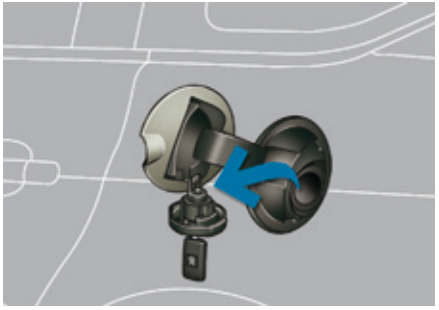
You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.
If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

Refuelling

A label affixed to the inside of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.
More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.
Opening the cap may trigger an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is completely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.





To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,
- ☞ remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- ☞ fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.

When refuelling is complete:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the filler flap.

Operating fault

A malfunction of the fuel gauge is indicated by the return to zero of the fuel gauge needle. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines



The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.
E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.
For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

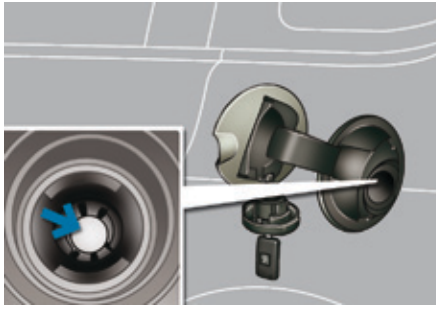


The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).
The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

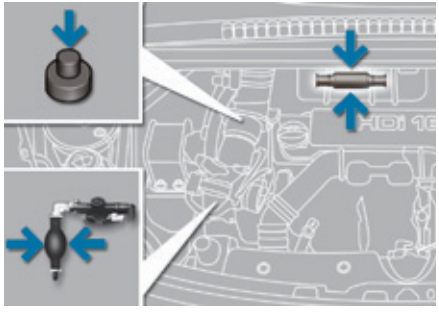
It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

* According to country of sale.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)



On vehicle fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the "Misfuel prevention (Diesel)" section.

! If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

1.6 litre HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Clip the styling cover back in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

2 litre HDi engine

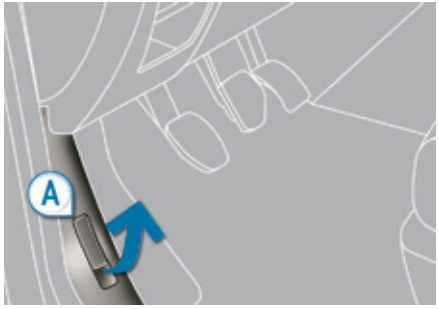
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Slacken the bleed screw.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- ☞ Tighten the bleed screw.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- ☞ Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

1.6 Blue HDi engine

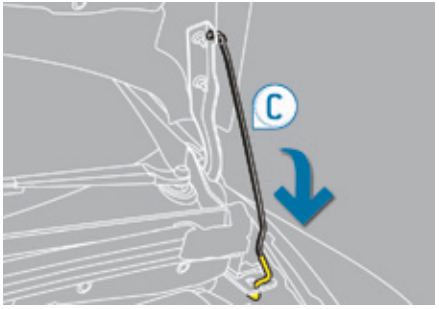
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

Bonnet

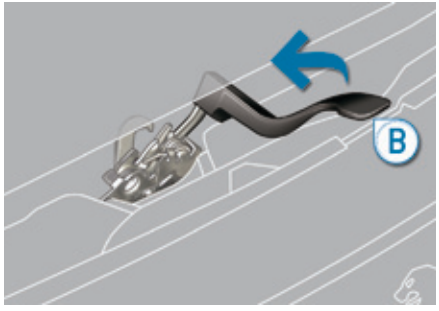
Opening



- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.



- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.



- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.

Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.
Do not open the bonnet in high winds.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

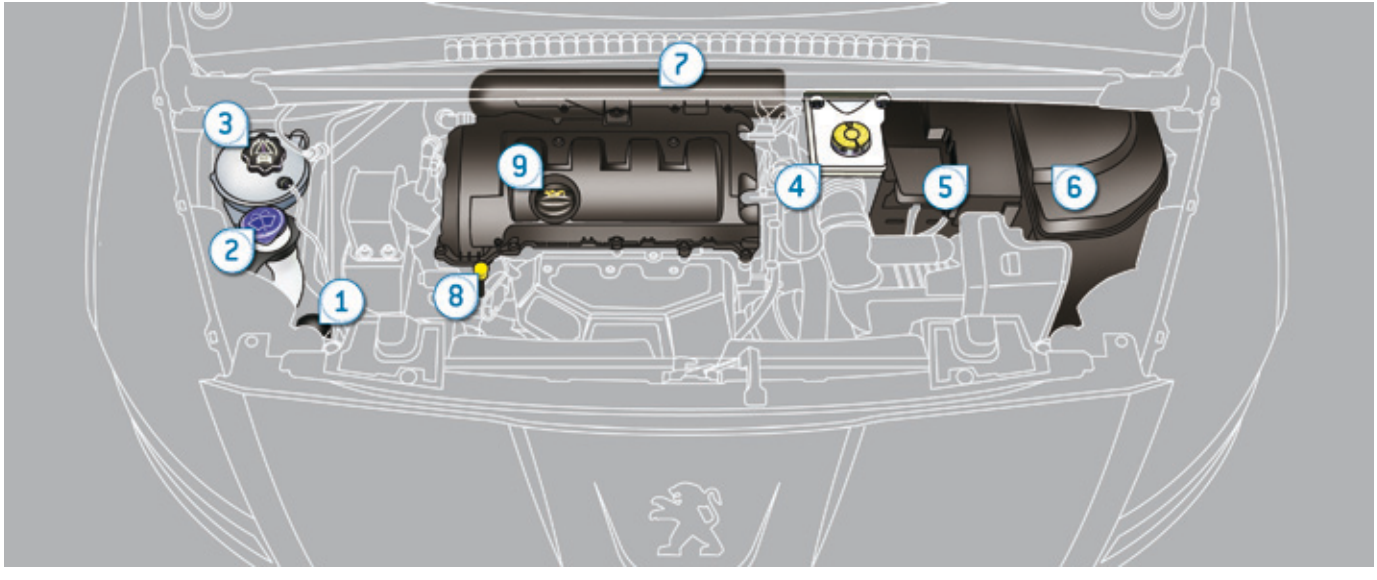
Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Underbonnet - petrol engines

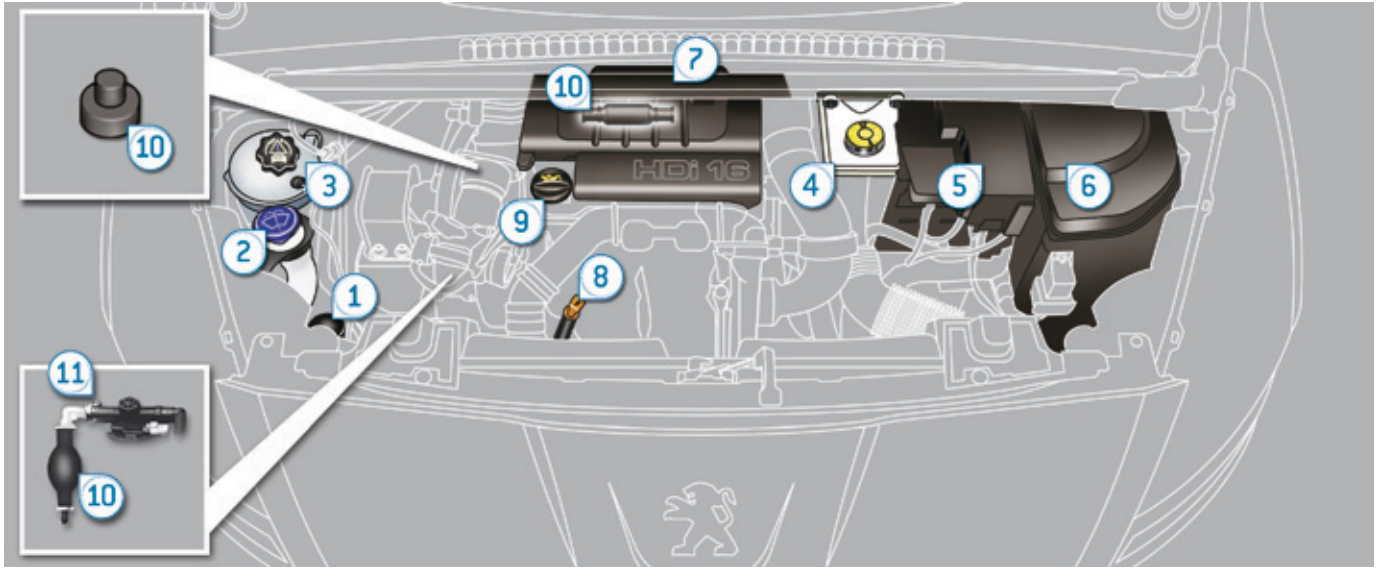
The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.



1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.

Underbonnet - Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.



1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Bleed screw*.

* Depending on engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the warranty and maintenance record. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles with an electric oil level gauge, or using the dipstick.

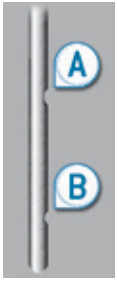
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the interval for this operation.
In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

9

Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might become caught by the fan blades.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the low fluid level is indicated by an audible signal and a message in the instrument panel screen.
Top up the reservoir when you next stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

In wintry conditions, the use of an ethyl alcohol or methanol base fluid is recommended.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)



A low additive level is indicated by illumination of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

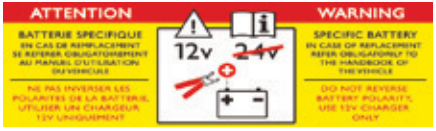
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the warranty and maintenance record and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the replacement intervals for these components.
Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.
A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.
Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle emission filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message in the multi-function screen.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for the checking interval for this component.

Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the warranty and maintenance record for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

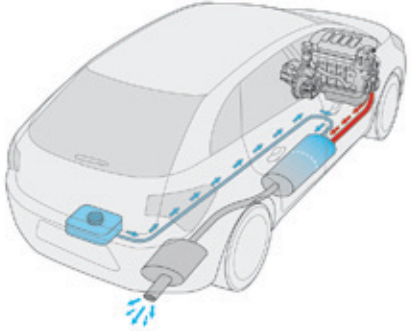
For more information, refer to the "Electric parking brake - Operating faults" section.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for Blue HDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle emissions filter (PEF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a dealer to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will longer meet the Euro 6 standard: you vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

Range indicators

When switching on the ignition, an indicator gives an estimate of the distance that can be travelled with your vehicle before engine starting is automatically prevented, once the vehicle starts using the reserve of AdBlue® or after a fault is detected with the SCR system.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range is the one displayed.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

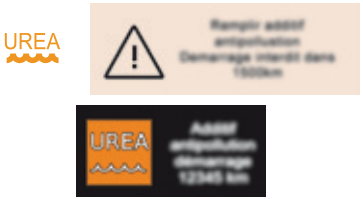
! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.



Pressing this button displays the driving range temporarily.
Above 3 000 miles (5 000 km), the value is not specified.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 900 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 150 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented in 350 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.
If you fail to do this, there is a risk that you will not be able to start your engine.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.
Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



When switching on the ignition, the UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message "Emissions fault" to signal a fault with the emissions control system.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears once the exhaust gas emissions return to normal.

During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), when switching on the ignition, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 150 miles") indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
If you fail to do this, there is a risk that you will not be able to start your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Freezing of the AdBlue® additive

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank.
In exceptional circumstances (vehicle kept for a long period at temperatures that are constantly below -15°C), an emissions control system fault alert may be related to freezing of the AdBlue® in your vehicle.
Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours until the additive becomes liquid again.
The emissions alert does not go off immediately, it will occur after several mile of running.

Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.
You can got to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has en irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would loose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute the additive with water.
Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



AdBlue®

The supply in non-drip bottles simplifies toping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half US gallon) bottles from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

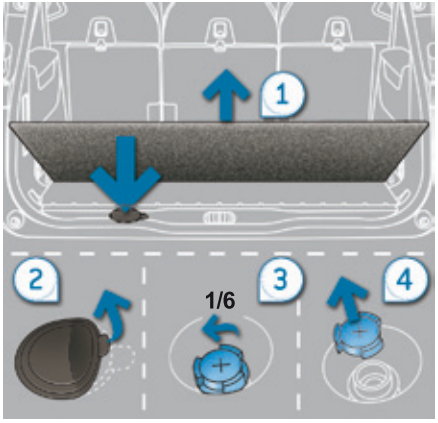
AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.
Additive that has been frozen can be used once it has thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise, by freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.



☞ For access to the AdBlue® tank, fold the left hand concertina boot floor and, on 7-seat versions, unfold the left hand seat in the third row.

☞ Lift the cut-out in the boot carpet.
☞ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using a lever.

☞ Insert your fingers into the aperture and turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Carefully lift off the cap, without dropping it.



☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in place.
☞ Lower the cut-out in the boot carpet.
☞ Unfold and reposition the concertina floor.

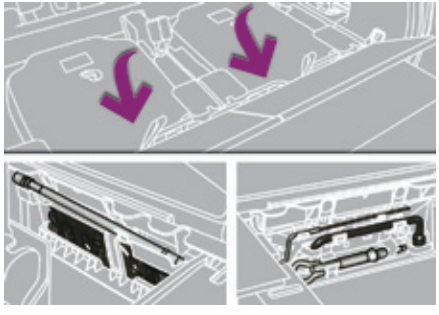
! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive**, signalled by the message "Top up emissions additive: Starting prevented", you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle or introducing the key into the ignition switch**.
Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with your vehicle. The content depends on your vehicle's equipment (temporary puncture repair kit or spare wheel)

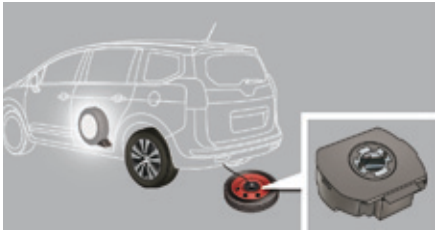
Access to the tools



To gain access to them:

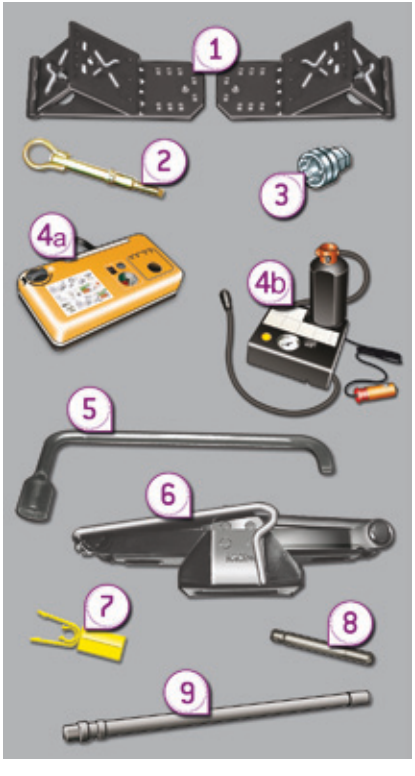
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the concertina boards.
- ☞ remove the spare wheel placed under the vehicle.

See the "Changing a wheel" section.



The tools **6** to **8** are stowed in a box, in the middle of the spare wheel, placed underneath the vehicle.
The tools **1**, **2**, **4a** to **5** and **9** are stowed under the concertina boards and in the boot inner trim.

! If your vehicle is equipped with temporary puncture repair kit, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for the part numbers of the tools needed: jack and wheelbrace.



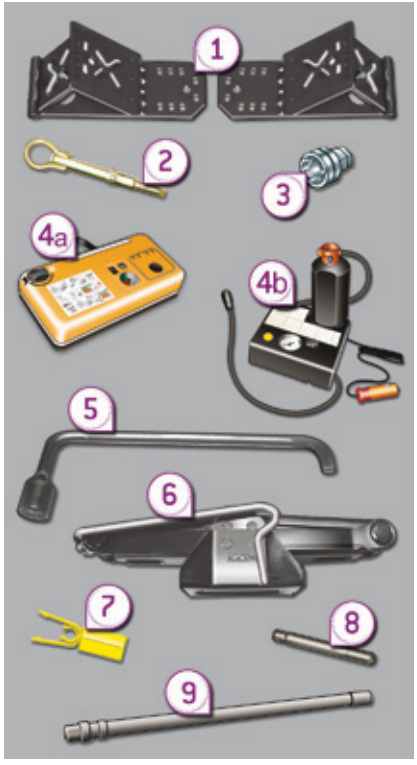
List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle.
Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Two chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).

2. Removable towing eye.
See the "Towing the vehicle" section.

3. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment).
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.



For versions without spare wheel:

4a. Temporary puncture repair kit (5-seat).

4b. Temporary puncture repair kit (7-seat).
Comprises a 12 V compressor and a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a puncture and can be used for adjusting tyre pressure.
See the "Temporary puncture repair kit" section.

For versions with spare wheel:

5. Wheelbrace.
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.

6. Jack with integral handle.
For raising the vehicle.

7. Wheel bolt cover removal tool (depending on equipment).
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

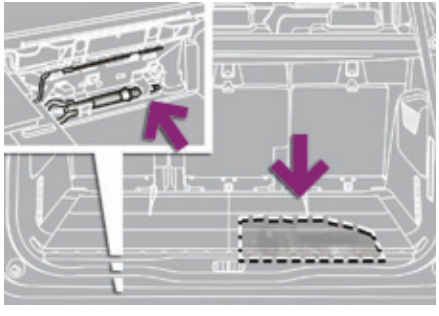
8. Centre guide (depending on equipment).
For refitting an alloy wheel to the hub.

9. Wheelbrace extension.
For unwinding/winding up the spare wheel carrier drive.

Temporary puncture repair kit (5-seat version)*

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



The kit is located in the boot under the concertina board.
The towing eye **2** is located in the boot interior trim, on the left-hand side.

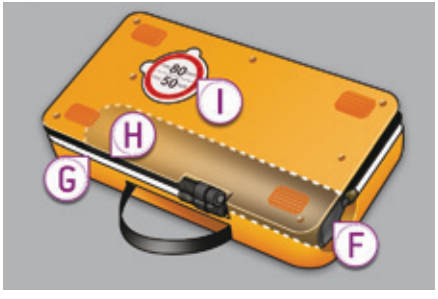
The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.

* Depending on country of sale.

Description of the kit



A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar and p.s.i.).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...



F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

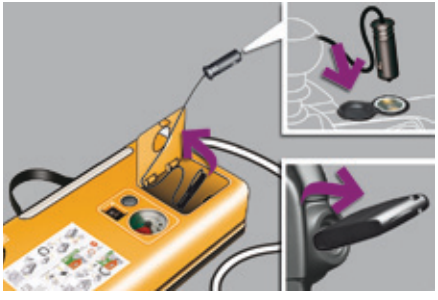
1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

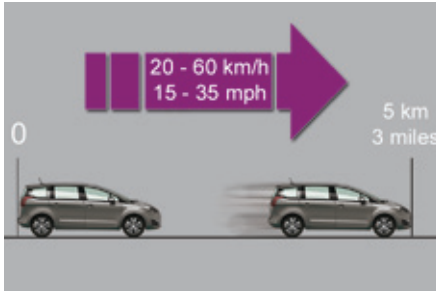
Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.

Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
  The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



- Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
  Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

! If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

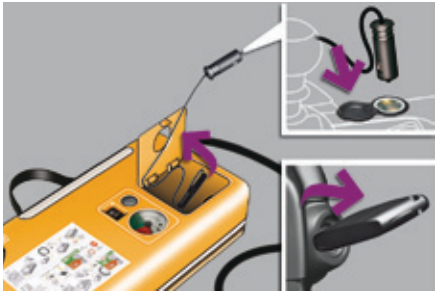
Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

2. Inflation



- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



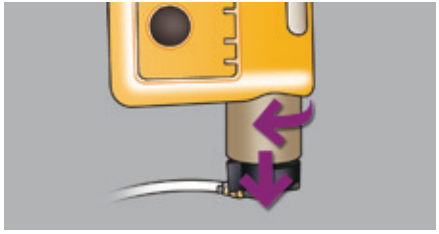
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).
  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

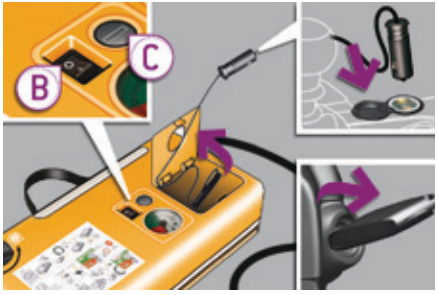
You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.

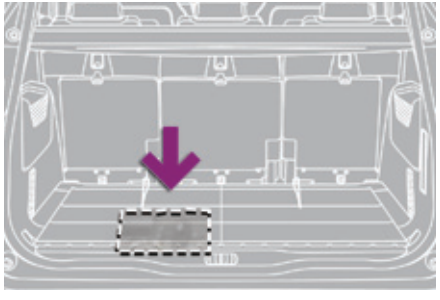




- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Temporary puncture repair kit (7 seat version)*

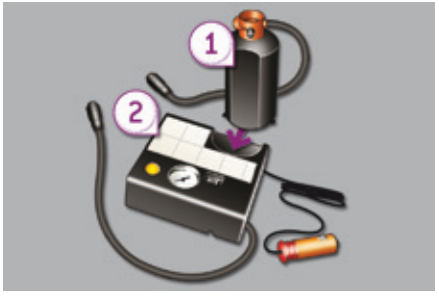
Complete system consisting of a compressor and a bottle of sealant which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



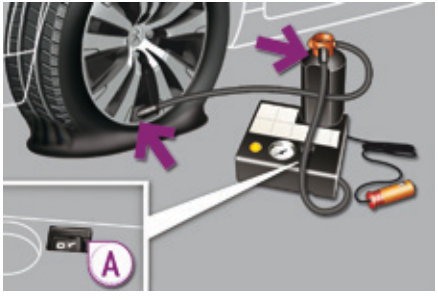
The kit is located in the boot, under the left hand seat in the 3rd row.

i This kit is available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, only where located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

Using the kit

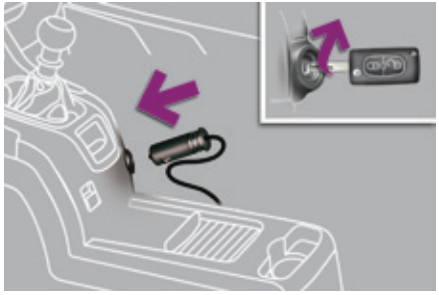


- Switch off the ignition.
- Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
- Clip the bottle **1** on the compressor **2**.

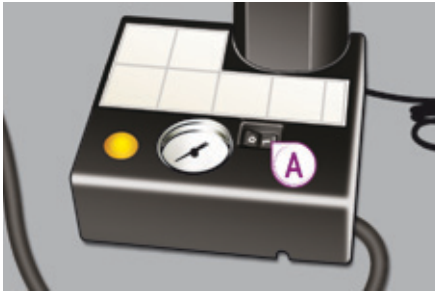


- Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position **"0"**.
- Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully, then connect it to the bottle.

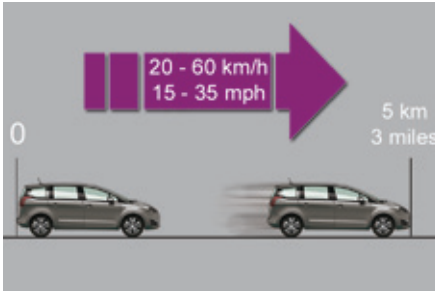
* According to country of sale.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



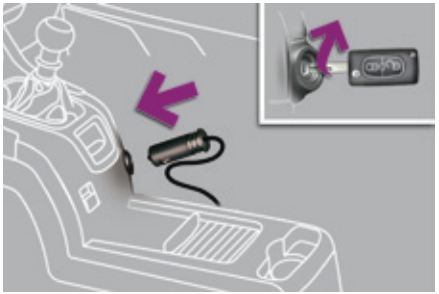
- Switch on the compressor by tilting the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



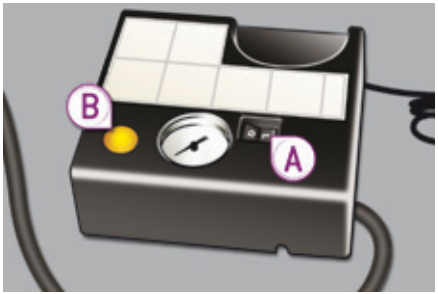
- Remove the compressor and store the bottle in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 10 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the pressure.



☞ Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
☞ Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.
☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) for no more than approximately 125 miles (200 km).
☞ Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.

i If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop to have your vehicle repaired.

Changing a wheel

See the "Tool kit" section.

Access to the spare wheel*



The spare wheel is supported by a cable-driven carrier underneath the vehicle.



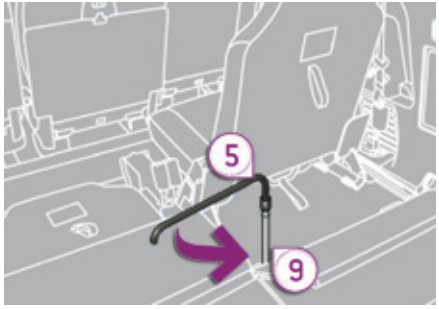
Taking out the wheel

- ☞ Raise the concertina board.
- ☞ Raise the cut-out in the boot carpet for access to the spare wheel carrier drive nut.

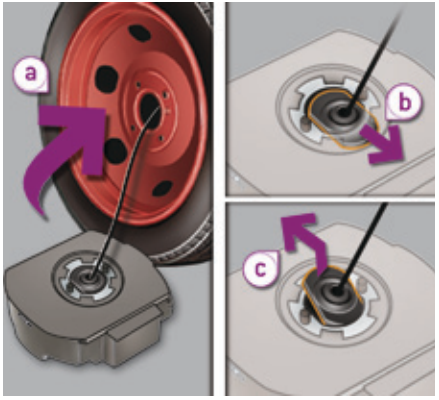
! Take care, the bottle of fluid contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the base of the bottle.
The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant product, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the tyre under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on country of sale.

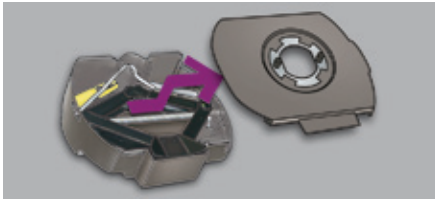


☞ Turn this drive nut fully clockwise, using the wheelbrace **5** and the extension **9**, to unwind the carrier cable.



☞ Detach the wheel/box assembly from the rear of the vehicle.

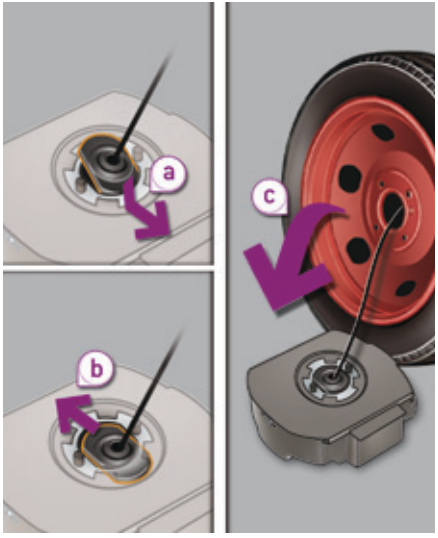
☞ Remove the hook with its connection plate to release the wheel/box assembly, as shown in the illustration.



☞ Pull out the wheel to gain access to the box.

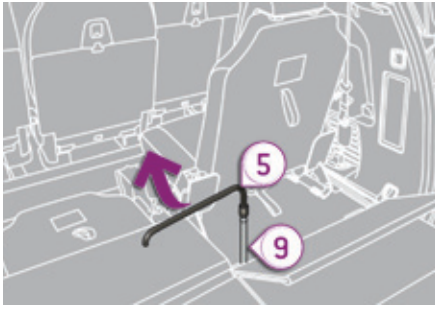
☞ Slide the box cover to the centre and remove it to gain access to the other tools.





Putting the wheel back in place

- Store the tools used in the box and close the cover.
- Position the box on the ground and centre the spare wheel on it.
- Pass the hook with its connection plate into the wheel then the box, as illustrated.



- Raise the wheel/box assembly underneath the vehicle by turning the carrier drive nut anticlockwise using the wheelbrace **5** and the extension **9**.
- Tighten fully and check that the wheel is horizontally flush against the floor.

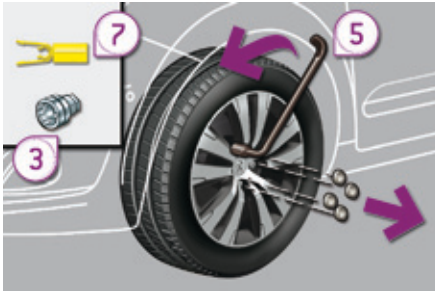
Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and block the wheels:

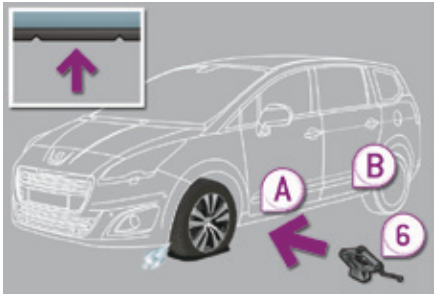
- by engaging 1st gear, with a manual gearbox,
- by placing the gear selector at position **R** with an electronic gearbox,
- by placing the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox.

Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp on the parking brake control come on.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

Removing a wheel



- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **7** (depending on equipment).
- Fit the security socket **3** on the wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- Position the foot the jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below one of the front **A** or rear **B** jacking points provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim using the wheelbrace **5** by pulling at the valve cut-out.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim by placing its cut-out at the valve, and press round its edge with the palm of your hand.



- ☞ Extend the jack until its head comes into contact with **A** or **B**; the contact surface **A** or **B** must be correctly engaged with the middle of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

Tyre under-inflation detection

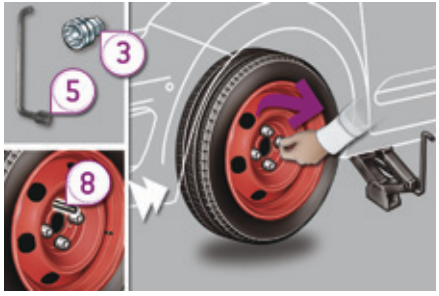
The space-saver type or steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.
The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack might slip and drop.
Position the jack only at the locations **A** or **B**.
Ensure that the head of the jack is positioned centrally on the jacking location.
Otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and the jack may drop.

Following a puncture

The punctured wheel cannot be stowed under the vehicle. It must be stowed in the boot. Use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.
When driving with the "space-saver" type spare wheel fitted, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Fitting a wheel



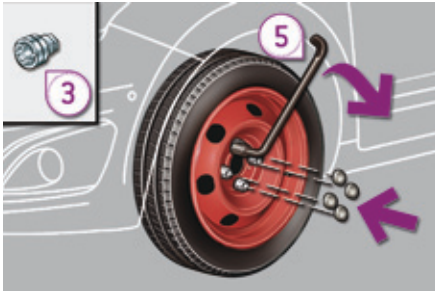
- Put the wheel in place on the hub using the centre guide **8**.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **3**, pre-tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **6** and detach it.

Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



- Using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **3**, tighten the security bolt (if your vehicle has them).
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
215/55 R16	9 mm
215/50 R17	
215/45 R18	

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Advice on installation

- If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

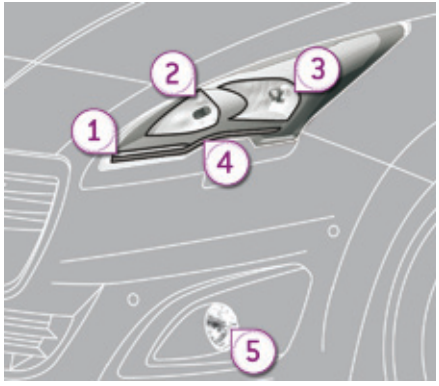
It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Changing a bulb

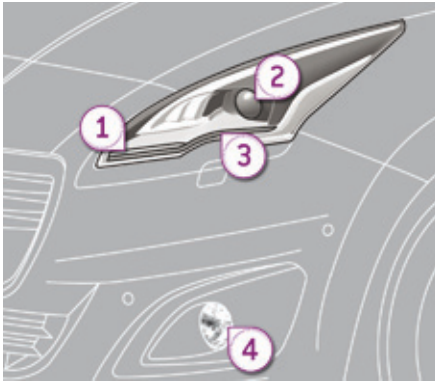
Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Main beam headlamps (HB3).**
3. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
4. **Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
5. **Foglamps (PS24W).**

Model with xenon and directional headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
2. **Dipped / main beam directional headlamps (D1S).**
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (light-emitting diodes - LEDs).**
4. **Foglamps (PS24W).**

! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

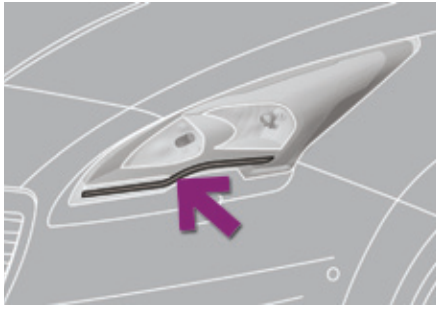
Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.

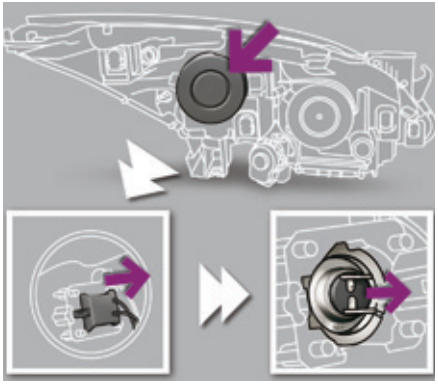
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Changing direction indicators and daytime running lamps / sidelamps



For the replacement of these LED (light-emitting diode) lamps, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

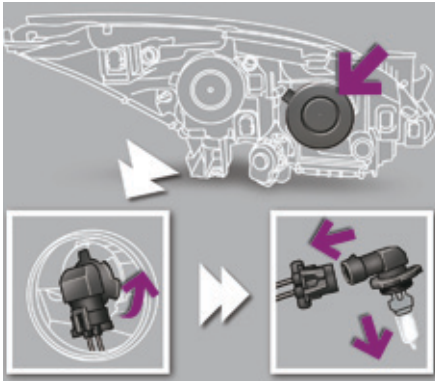
Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (models with halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Extract the bulb by pulling and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (halogen model)



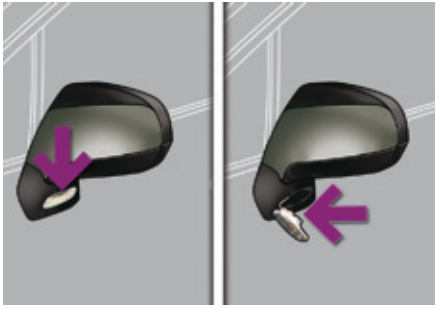
- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Without disconnecting the connector, turn the body of the bulb a quarter of a turn to the left to disengage the assembly.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector to release the bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing dipped beam and main beam headlamp bulbs (models with xenon headlamps)

D1S xenon bulbs must be changed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.
It is recommended that all D1S bulbs are changed at the same time if one of them fails.

Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

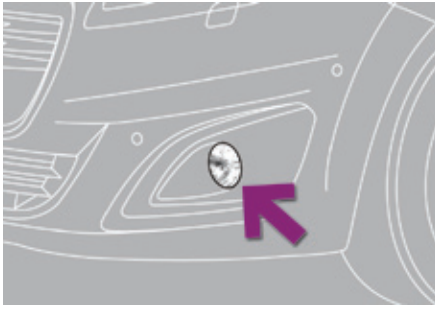


- Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a new repeater.

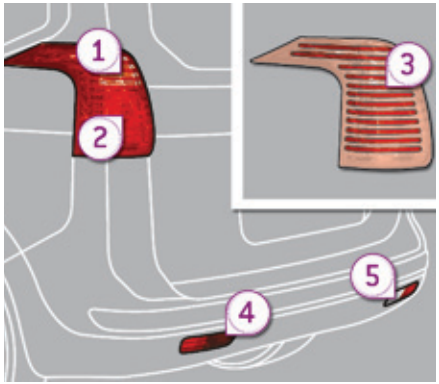
You can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have these lamps changed.

Changing foglamp bulbs



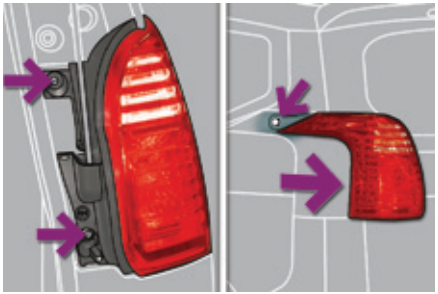
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps

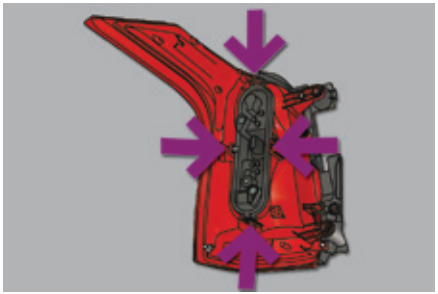


1. **Direction indicators (PY21W-21W).**
2. **Brake lamps (P21W-21W).**
3. **Sidelamps (LEDs).**
4. **Reversing lamp (P21W).**
5. **Foglamp (P21W).**

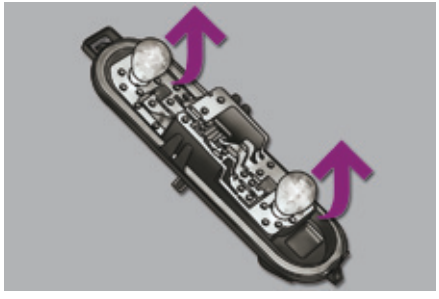
Changing brake lamp and direction indicator bulbs



- ☞ Remove the two lamp unit fixing nuts.
- ☞ Pull the lamp rearwards (a positioning lug retains the lamp).
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.



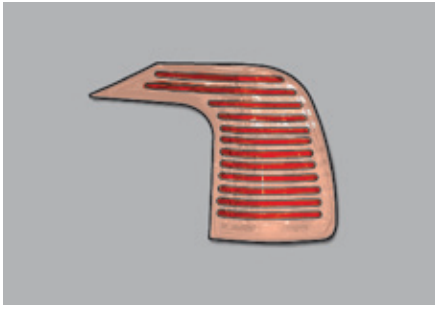
- ☞ Press the four tabs and remove the bulb holder.



☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

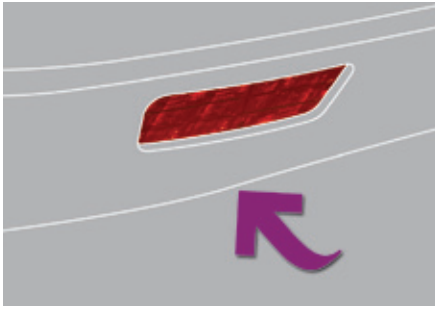
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing sidelamps (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

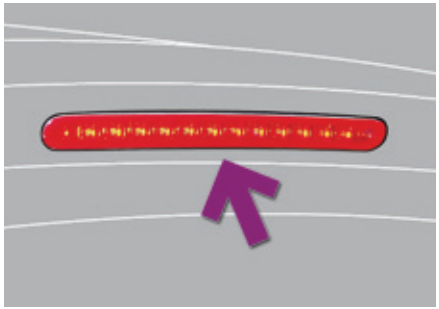
Changing foglamp or reversing lamp bulbs



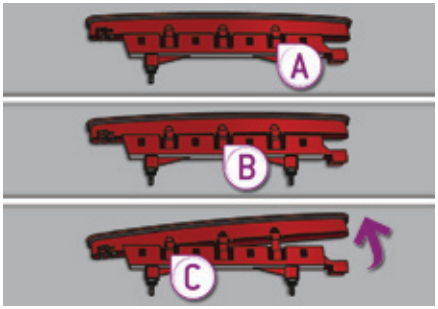
☞ Reach under the bumper.

☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

Changing the third brake lamp bulb (5W5)

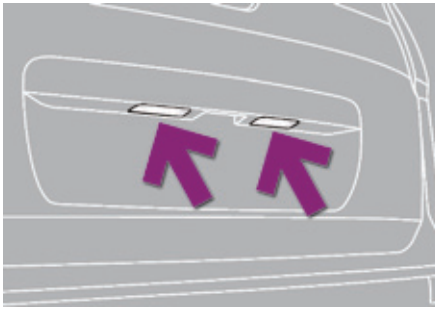


- Open the boot and remove the upper tailgate seal.
- Remove the centre tailgate trim.
- Unscrew the two nuts using a 10mm spanner.
- Press the threaded pins while supporting the lamp from the outside.
- Close the tailgate.
- Disconnect the lamp connector then the screenwash pipe to remove the lens.



- Press the pairs of clips **A** then **B** then **C** to detach the bulb holders.

Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)

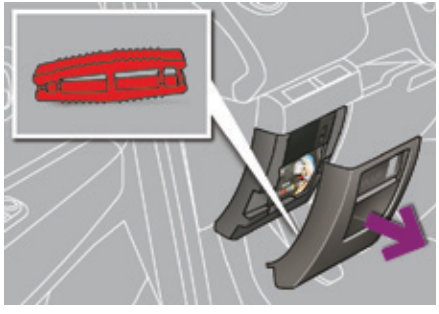


- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

Changing a fuse

Procedure for replacing a faulty fuse with a new fuse to rectify a failure of the corresponding function.

Access to the tools



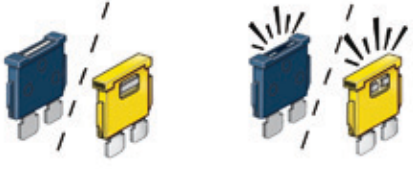
The extraction tweezer is fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
To gain access to it:

- ☞ Remove the cover completely.
- ☞ Remove the tweezer.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

- ☞ Identify the failed fuse by checking the condition of its filament.



Good **Failed**

- ☞ Use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing.
- ☞ Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- ☞ Check that the number marked on the fusebox, the rating marked on the fuse and the following tables all agree.

! The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction on your vehicle.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Installing electrical accessories

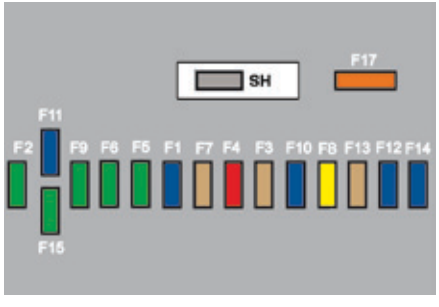
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard.



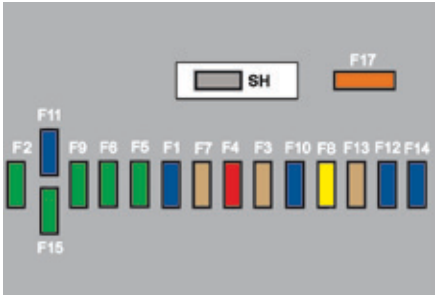


Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	**15**	Rear wiper.
F2	**-**	Not used.
F3	**5**	Airbag control unit.
F4	**10**	Electrochrome rear view mirror, air conditioning, switching and protection unit, rear multimedia.
F5	**30**	Front one-touch electric windows.
F6	**30**	Rear one-touch electric windows.
F7	**5**	Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, rear reading lamps, sun visor lighting, glove box lighting, centre armrest lighting, boot 12 V relay control.

Access to the fuses

☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F8	20	Audio equipment, audio/telephone, CD changer, multifunction scren, tyre under-inflation detection, alarm siren, alarm control unit, telematic unit.
F9	30	Front 12 V socket, cigarette lighter, rear 12 V socket.
F10	15	Steering mounted controls.
F11	15	Low current ignition switch.
F12	15	Trailer presence, rain / sunshine sensor, supply for fuses F32, F34, F35.
F13	5	Engine fusebox, airbag control unit.
F14	15	Instrument panel, instrument panel screen, supply for fuse F33.
F15	30	Locking and deadlocking.
F17	40	Heated rear screen, supply for fuse F30.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F30	**5**	Heated door mirrors.
F31	**30**	Boot 12 V socket.
F32	**5**	Electronic gearbox gear lever.
F33	**10**	Head-up display, Bluetooth system, air conditioning.
F34	**5**	Seat belt warning lamp display.
F35	**10**	Parking sensors, Hi-Fi amplifier authorisation.
F36	**10**	Trailer fusebox control unit, driver's door control pad.
F37	**20**	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F38	**30**	Driver's electric seat.
F39	**20**	Panoramic sunroof blind.

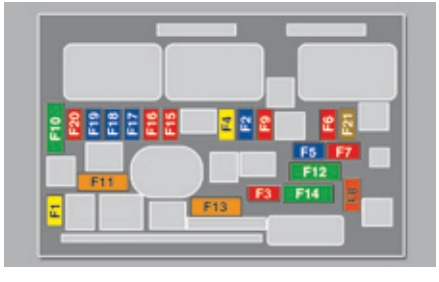
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.



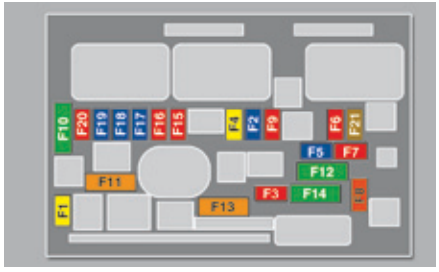
Access to the fuses

- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



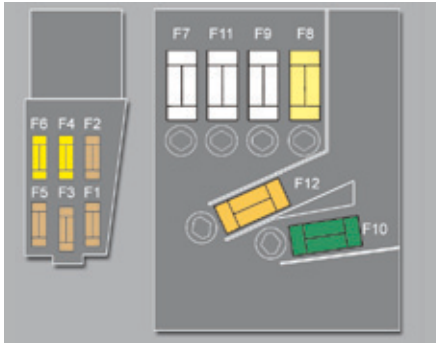
Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	15	Horn.
F3	10	Front / rear wash-wipe.
F4	10	Daytime running lamps.
F5	15	Purge canister, turbine discharge and Turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 litre THP), oil vapour heater (1.6 litre THP), diesel heater (1.6 litre HDi).
F6	10	Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, particle emission filter pump (Diesel), Distance alert, mirror adjustment control.
F7	10	Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, directional headlamps height adjustment motor.
F8	20	Starter motor control.
F9	10	Clutch and brake pedal switches.
F11	40	Air conditioning fan.



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F12	**30**	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F14	**30**	Air pump.
F15	**10**	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F16	**10**	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F17	**15**	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F18	**15**	Right-hand dipped headlamp.

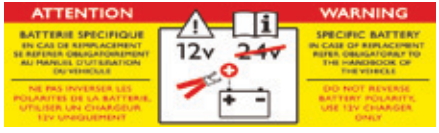
Table of fuses above the battery



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F2	**5**	Dual function brake switch.
F3	**5**	Battery charge unit.
F4	**25**	ABS/DSC electrovalves.
F6	**15**	Electronic / automatic gearbox.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

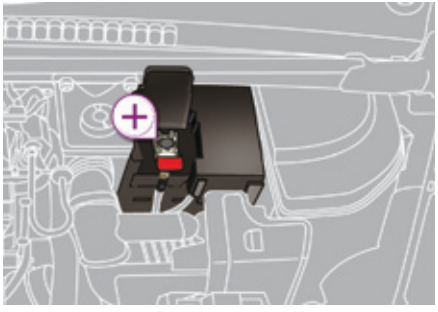


The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

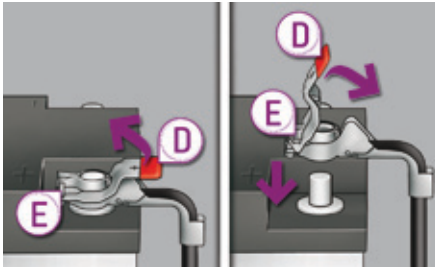
With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.
To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover on the (+) terminal,



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

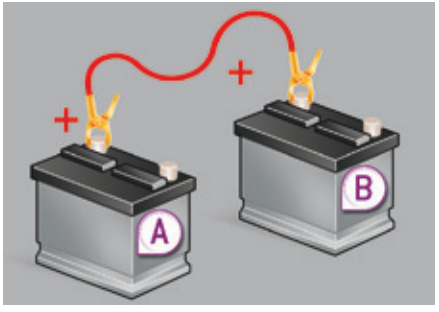
Reconnecting the (+) cable

- ☞ Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

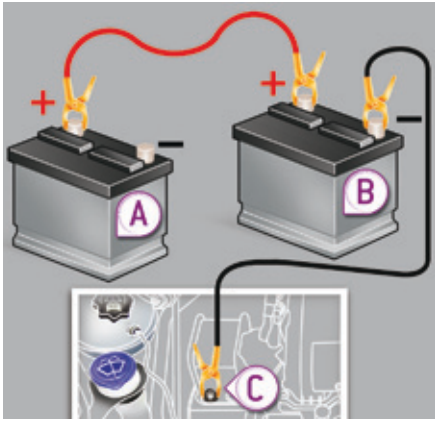
i Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.



- Remove the plastic cover from the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).



- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run
  If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ☞ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ☞ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ☞ Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ☞ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.
Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems.
However, if problems remain following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- ...

Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.
This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this time has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

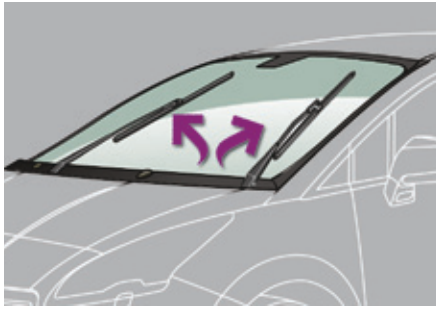
If the telephone is being used at this time:
- it will be maintained for 5 minutes with the hands-free kit of your PEUGEOT Connect Sound or PEUGEOT Connect Navigation,
- it will still be possible to finish the call with the PEUGEOT Connect Media.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for at least 5 minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.
A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the "Battery" paragraph).

Changing a wiper blade



Before removing a front wiper blade

- Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

- Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

- Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

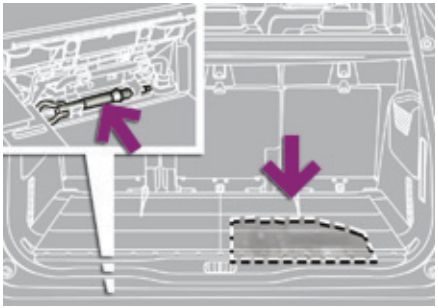
After fitting a front wiper blade

- Switch on the ignition.
- Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the removable towing eye provided in the tool kit.

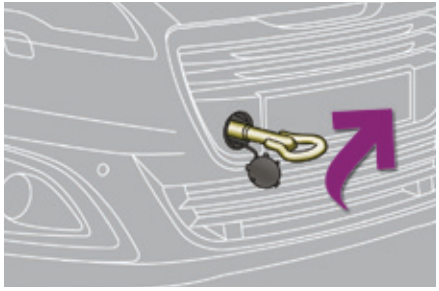
Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed under the left-hand concertina board, in the boot interior trim.
For access to it:

- open the boot,
- raise the concertina board,
- remove the towing eye from the holder.

Towing your vehicle



- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Put the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an electronic or automatic gearbox).
Failure to follow this instruction could lead to damage to certain components (brakes, transmission, ...) and the absence of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.
When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- 4 wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

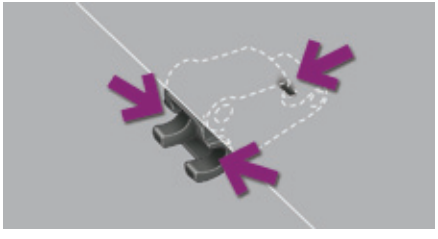
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

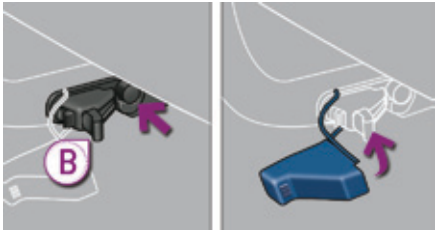
Fitting



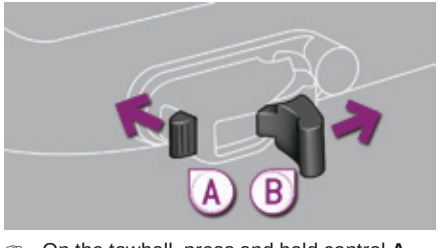
☞ Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective cover on the carrier.



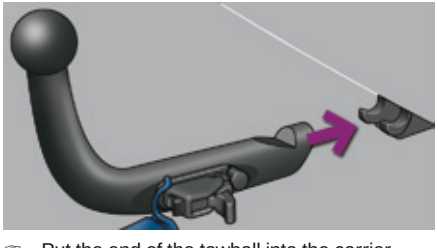
☞ Before fitting the towball, check that the points of contact, indicated by the arrows, are clean.
Use a soft clean cloth.



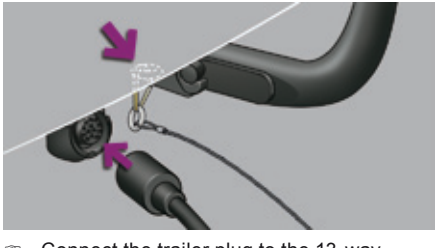
☞ Ensure that the towball is fully engaged. The two pins must be in contact with the cut-outs in the carrier and the trigger **B** must have returned to the "locked" position.
☞ Install and clip in place the protective cover, by rotating it to the left.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.



☞ Put the end of the towball into the carrier, located below the bumper, as far as it will go.

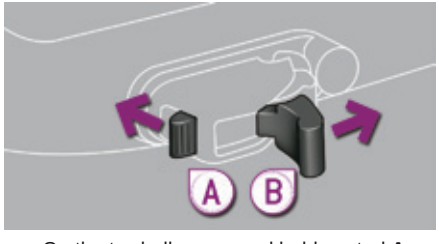


☞ Connect the trailer plug to the 13-way socket provided, located next to the carrier.
☞ Make the trailer safe by attaching its safety cable to the eye provided for this purpose, located on the carrier.

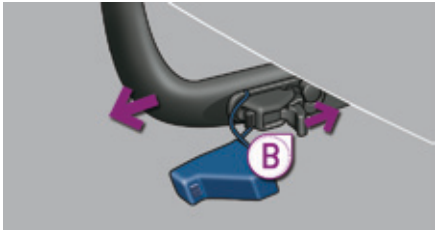
Removing



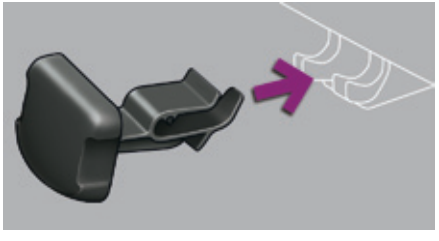
☞ Unclip and remove the protective cover, by turning it to the right.



☞ On the towball, press and hold control **A**.
☞ Release the locking mechanism by pressing the trigger **B**.



☞ Press the trigger **B** and remove the towball by pulling it towards you.



☞ Clip the protective cover in place on the carrier located below the bumper.

When the towball is installed, it may interfere with the complete opening of the lower tailgate.
Take care to avoid the tailgate coming into contact with the towball.

If the towball is not locked in place, the trailer could separate. There is a risk of an accident.
Always lock the towball in the way described.

Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Remove the towball when it is not being used.
Before setting off, check that the trailer lighting and signalling works correctly.
Maximum authorised nose weight: 70 kg.
Refer to the "Technical data" section for the maximum weights and towed loads for your vehicle.

Carrying system (box or bicycle carrier). You must not exceed the maximum nose weight on the towbar: if this weight is exceeded, the device could detach from the vehicle and cause a serious accident.

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

! If the trailer starts to sway, you risk losing control. The trailer could overturn. There is a risk of an accident. Do not try to correct the trailer's movement by accelerating. Reduce your speed and do not counter-steer. Brake if necessary.

i We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

i Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

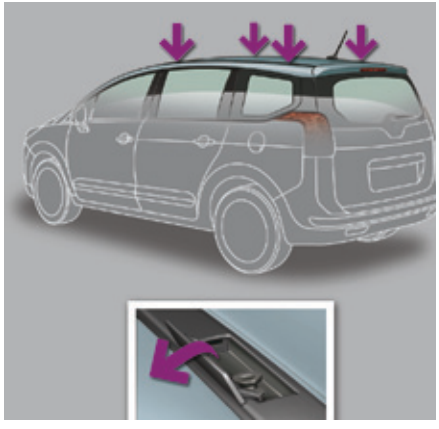
☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

Fitting roof bars



When fitting transverse roof bars, use the four quick-fit fixings provided for this purpose:

- ☞ lift the concealing flaps,
- ☞ open the fixing covers on each bar using the key,
- ☞ put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ☞ ensure that roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them),
- ☞ close the fixing covers on each bar using the key.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): **65** kg.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

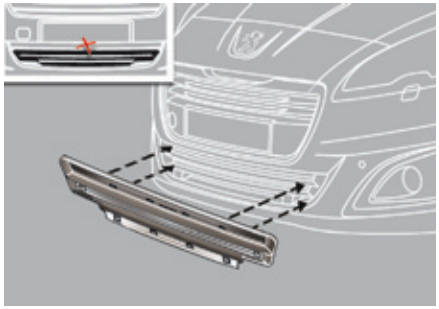


If your vehicle is fitted with roof finishers, do not use them for carrying loads.

Very cold climate screen

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.
Before fitting or removing the screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped. It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Fitting



- ☞ Offer up the screen, placing the lower clips in contact with lower section of the lower grille, using the centre guide as an aid.
- ☞ Clip first the lower part, then the upper part, from the middle out towards the edges.

Removal



- ☞ Unclip the upper part of the screen, starting at the edges.
- ☞ Take the screen by the lower edges and detach it by pulling it towards you.

i Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10° C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the PEUGEOT dealer network.
These accessories and parts are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

"Comfort"

Door deflectors, parking sensors, side window blinds, coat-hanger, insulated module...

"Style"

Alloy wheels, door sill trims, chrome-plated door handle shells, spoiler, gear lever knob...

"Protection"

Mats*, boot liner, luggage net, style mud flaps**, seat covers, pet range, boot sill protector...

"Transport solutions"

Roof bars, towbars, bicycle carrier on towbar, bicycle carrier on roof bars, ski carrier, rigid and flexible roof boxes...
Trailer towbar, which must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

"Safety and security"

Anti-theft alarm, window etching, wheel security bolts, child seats and booster cushions, first aid kit, breathalyzer, warning triangle, high visibility vest, stolen vehicle tracking system, dog guard, winter equipment (snow chains, non-slip covers...)...

* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

** The configuration of the vehicle requires that it be fitted with mud flaps at the rear.

"Multimedia"

Portable satellite navigation systems, mapping updates, Bluetooth hands-free system, DVD player, USB Box, additional Bluetooth wireless headphones, Bluetooth audio headphones mains charger, multimedia support...

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

You can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (exterior and interior), products for topping up (screenwash fluid...) and refills (sealant cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...) from PEUGEOT dealers.

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Engine	**1.6 litre VTi 120 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 150 / 156 / 163 hp**		**1.6 litre e-THP 165 hp**
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 598		1 598
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	77 x 85.8		77 x 85.8
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	88	110 / 115 / 120		121
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 660	6 000-6 050 / 6 000 / 6 000		6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	160	240		240
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 250	1 400		1 400
Fuel	Unleaded petrol	Unleaded petrol		Unleaded petrol
Catalytic converter	yes	yes		yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	4.25	4.25		4.25

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	1.6 litre VTi 120 hp		1.6 litre THP 156 hp		1.6 litre THP 150 / 156 / 163 hp		1.6 litre e-THP 165 hp	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)		Manual (6 speed)		Automatic (6-speed)		Automatic (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7	5	7
- Unladen weight	1 405	1 430	1 460	1 490	1 510	1 540	1 500	1 500
- Kerb weight*	1 480	1 505	1 535	1 565	1 585	1 615	1 575	1 575
- Payload	595	760	590	735	565	710	560	725
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 000	2 190	2 050	2 225	2 075	2 250	2 060	2 225
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 300	3 290	3 400	3 425	2 875 / 3 525 / 2 875	3 050 / 3 550 / 3 050	3 510	3 525
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 300	1 100	1 350	1 200	800 / 1 450 / 800	800 / 1 300 / 800	1 450	1 300
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 500	1 400	1 550	1 500	800 / 1 650 / 800	800 / 1 600 / 800	1 650	1 600
- Unbraked trailer	740	750	750				750	
- Recommended nose weight	70		70				70	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Engine	**1.6 litre e-HDi 110 / 115 hp**		**1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 / 120 hp**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	82 - 84		84 / 88
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 600		3 500
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	270		300
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes		yes
Particle emission filter	yes		yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	3.75		-

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Diesel engines and gearboxes (continued)

Engine	**2 litre HDi 136 / 150 hp**	**2 litre HDi 163 hp**	**2 litre BlueHDi 136 / 150 hp**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997		1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88		85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)*	100 / 110	120	100 / 110
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000 / 3 750	3 750	4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	320 / 340	340	370
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000		2 000
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	yes		yes
Particle emission filter	yes		yes
Engine oil capacity (in litres) (with filter replacement)	-		-

11

* The maximum power corresponds to the type approved value on a test bed, under the conditions defined in European legislation (directive 1999/99/CE).

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Engine	**1.6 litre e-HDi 110 / 115 hp**					
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		Electronic (6-speed)		Electronic (6-speed) Score	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7
- Unladen weight	1 430		1 430	1 520	1 430	1 520
- Kerb weight*	1 505		1 505	1 595	1 505	1 595
- Payload	640	820	640	730	640	730
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 070	2 250	2 070	2 250	2 070	2 250
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	2 950		3 170	3 150	2 920	2 950
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	880	700	1 100	900	850	700
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 080	900	1 300	1 100	1 050	900
- Unbraked trailer	750	700	750		750	
- Recommended nose weight	70		70		70	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 hp**			
Gearbox	Electronic (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed) Score	
Seats	5	7	5	7
- Unladen weight	1 490			
- Kerb weight*	1 565			
- Payload	590	760	590	760
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 080	2 250	2 080	2 250
- Gross vehicle weight (MTRA) on a 12% gradient	3 180	3 150	2 980	2 950
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 100	900	900	700
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 300	1 100	1 100	900
- Unbraked trailer	750			
- Recommended nose weight	70			

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	**2 litre HDi 136 / 150 hp**		**2 litre HDi 163 hp**		**2 litre BlueHDi 150 hp**	
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)		Automatic (6-speed)		Manual (6-speed)	
Seats	5	7	5	7	5	7
- Unladen weight	1 540		1 589	1 619	1 530	
- Kerb weight*	1 615		1 664	1 694	1 605	
- Payload	585	770	536	711	610	780
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 125	2 310	2 125	2 330	2 140	2 310
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient	3 475	3 510	3 525	3 530	3 490	3 510
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1 350	1 200	1 400	1 200	1 350	1 200
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 550	1 500	1 600	1 500	1 550	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	750		750		750	
- Recommended nose weight	70		70		70	

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.
* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

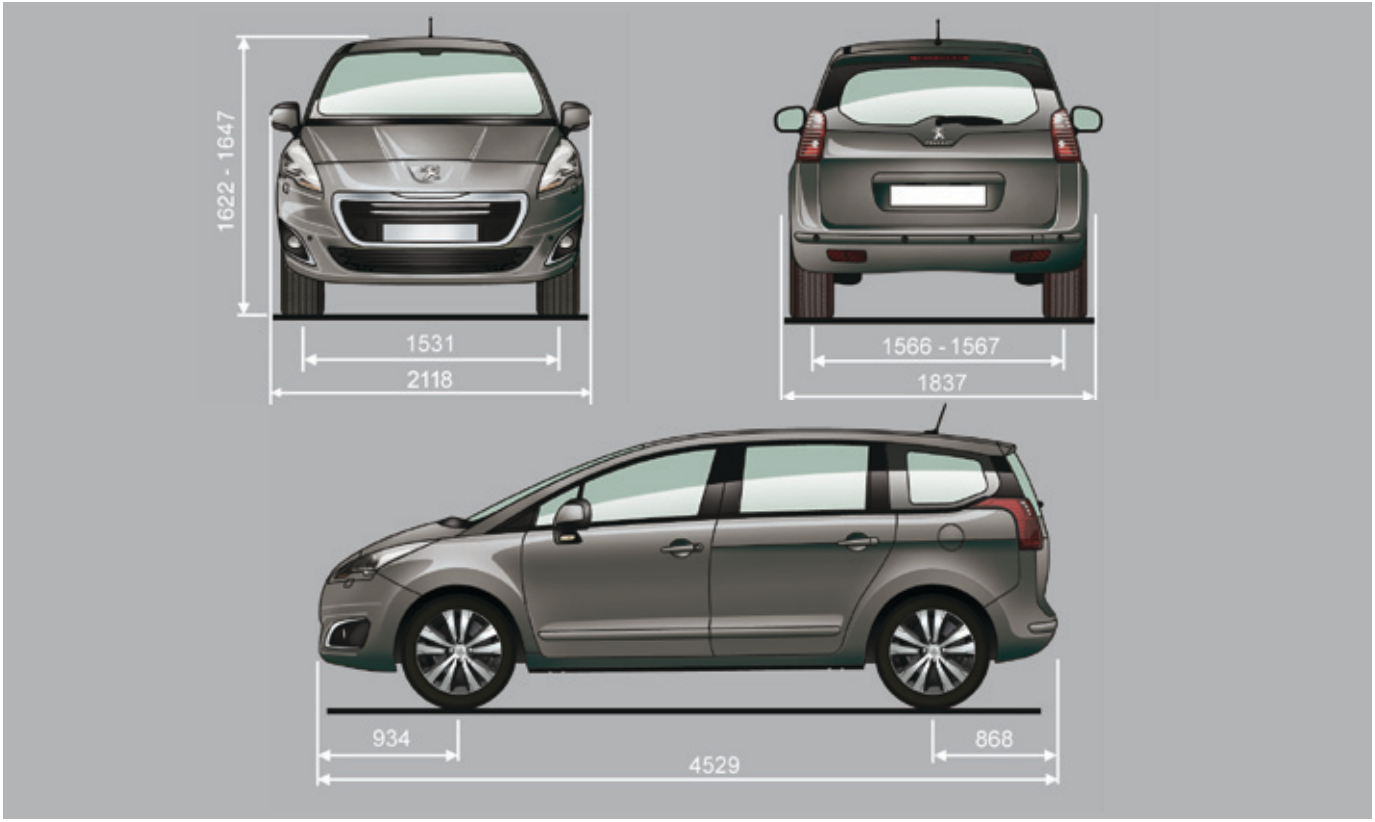
Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg) - commercial vehicles

Engines	**1.6 litre e-HDi 115 hp**			**2 litre HDi 150 hp**	**2 litre BlueHDI 150 hp**
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model codes	9HZ	9HZ	9HR	RHE	AHX
- Unladen weight	1 481	1 482	1 481	1 572	1 649
- Kerb weight*	1 556	1 557	1 556	1 647	1 724
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)**	2 225	2 230	2 200	2 310	2 300
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12% gradient***	3 120		3 170	3 475	3 450
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient****	895	890	970	1 165	1 150
- Braked trailer (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	X	X	X	X	X
- Unbraked trailer	750			750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70			70	70

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).
** Exceeding the maximum rear axle weight involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.
*** Exceeding the gross vehicle weight when the vehicle is towing involves limiting the speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) as defined in point 2.7 of the Directive.
**** Maximum braked trailer weight within the GTW limit; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1000 metres of altitude.
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Dimensions (in mm)



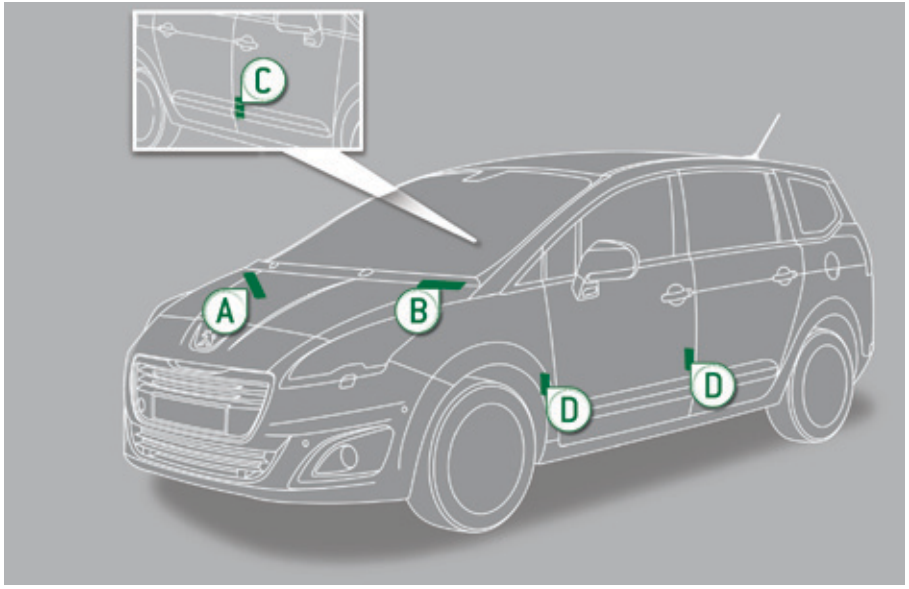
Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and tracing of your vehicle.

A. **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.**
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

B. **Vehicle identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower crossmember.**
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. **Manufacturer's label.**
The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the door aperture, on the driver's side.



D. **Tyre/paint label.**
This label is fitted to the middle pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

PEUGEOT Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" centre*.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green LED goes off. Cancellation is confirmed by a voice message

To cancel a call, tell the "PEUGEOT Connect SOS" call centre that the call was a mistake.

"PEUGEOT Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle, starts communication with you in your language**, and where necessary sends the appropriate public emergency services**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location .

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* Subject to the general conditions for the service available from dealers and to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographical cover of "PEUGEOT Connect SOS", "PEUGEOT Connect Assistance" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services services is available from dealers or at www.peugeot.co.uk.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of "PEUGEOT CONNECT services" services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL USING PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)

PEUGEOT Connect SOS

Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation / Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).

A call is made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.

In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).

If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

PEUGEOT Connect Assistance



Press this button for access to PEUGEOT services.



Select "Customer call" to request any information about the PEUGEOT marque.

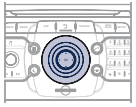
Customer call





Select "PEUGEOT Assistance" to make a roadside assistance call.

PEUGEOT Assistance



This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer. If you have purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.

400
400
500
500
400
400



PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D)

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE GPS EUROPE

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	276
02	Voice commands and steering mounted controls	p.	278
03	General operation	p.	281
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	286
05	Traffic information	p.	295
06	Radio	p.	297
07	Music media players	p.	298
08	Using the telephone	p.	303
09	Screen menu map	p.	308
	Frequently asked questions	p.	313

PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) control panel

Access to the Media Menu (audio CD, Jukebox, Auxiliary input).
Display the list of tracks.
Change the audio source.

Access to the Navigation Menu and display recent destinations.

Abandon the current operation.
Long press: return to main display.

Access to the Traffic Menu.

Access to the Address book Menu.

Access to the Radio Menu
Display the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM band) or frequency order (AM band).



Access to the "SETUP" menu (configuration).
Long press: GPS coverage.

Audio settings (Balance / Fader, Bass / Treble, Musical ambience...).

Enter the numbers or letters using the alpha-numeric keypad.
Presetting 10 radio frequencies.

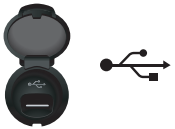
Adjust volume (each source is independent, including navigation messages and alerts).
Long press: reinitialise the system.
Short press: mute.

Automatic search down/up for radio frequencies.
Select previous/next CD or MP3 track.

SD card reader.

Short press: clears the last character.





Press to left / right:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next frequency.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": horizontal movement on the map.

Press up / down:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the MP3 folder.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": vertical movement on the map.

Go the the next or previous page in a menu.

Movement on the virtual keypad displayed.

OK: confirm the highlighted item.

Select the type of permanent display.

CALL: access to the Phone menu.

Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.



Rotate the dial:

With display of the "RADIO" screen: select the previous / next radio station in the list.

With display of the "MEDIA" screen: select the previous / next CD or MP3 track.

With display of the "MAP" or "NAV": zoom the map in/out.

Movement of the menu selection cursor.

Normal display or black screen.

END CALL: access to the Phone menu.

End a call in progress or reject an incoming call, Bluetooth connection.

Initiation of voice commands
Voice recognition

1

Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and practice the tutorial.

2



Press the SETUP button and select the "Language & Speech" function.
Turn the ring and select "Voice control".
Activate voice recognition.
Select "Tutorial".



The phrases to be spoken according to the context are indicated in the tables below.
Speak and PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) acts.



Pressing the end of the lighting control stalk activates voice recognition.



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
GENERAL	Help address book Help voice control Help media Help navigation Help telephone Help radio Cancel Correction	Access to the address book help Access to the voice recognition help Access to the media management help Access to the guidance, navigation help Access to the telephone help Access to the radio help To cancel a voice command which is in progress Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out Clear
RADIO	Select station Station <tts:stationName> Read out station list Enter frequency Select wave band AM FM TA on TA off	Select a radio station Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list Listen to the list of stations available Listen to the frequency of the current radio station Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM) Change the frequency waveband to AM Change the frequency waveband to FM Activate Traffic Info (TA) Deactivate Traffic Info
NAVIGATION	Destination input Voice advice off Voice advice on Save address Start guidance Abort guidance Navigate entry POI Search	Command to enter a new destination address Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions Activate the spoken guidance instructions Save an address in the address book Start guidance (once the address has been entered) Stop the guidance Start guidance to an entry in the address book Start guidance to a point of interest

Initiation of voice commands
Voice recognition



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
MEDIA	Media	Select the MEDIA source
	Select media	Choose a source
	Single slot	Select the CD player source
	Jukebox	Select the Jukebox source
	USB	Select the USB player source
	External device	Select the audio AUX input source
	SD-Card	Select the SD card source
	Track <1 - 1000>	Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
	Folder <1 - 1000>	Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
TELEPHONE	Phone menu	Open the Telephone Menu
	Enter number	Enter a telephone number to be called
	Phone book	Open the phone book
	Dial	Make a call
	Save number	Save a number in the phone book
	Accept	Accept an incoming call
	Reject	Reject an incoming call
ADDRESS BOOK	Address book menu	Open the address book
	Call <entry>	Call file using its <file> description as described in the address book
	Navigate <entry>	Start guidance to an address in the address book using its <file> description

02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Steering mounted controls

Wiper stalk: display "RADIO" and "MEDIA".

Lighting stalk: activate voice commands with a short press; indication of the current navigation instruction with a long press

Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the next track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast forwards.

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.

CD audio: select the previous/next track

If "MEDIA" is displayed in the screen:

MP3 CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous/next folder.

Select the previous/next item in the contacts list.



Change audio source.

Start a call from the contacts list

Call/hang up the telephone.

Confirm a selection.

Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone menu.

Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: select the previous track.

CD / SD CARD / JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast backwards.

Volume increase.

Volume decrease.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

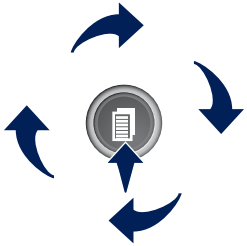
Contextual display

Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

RADIO / MUSIC MEDIA / VIDEO

TELEPHONE (If a conversation is in progress)







FULL SCREEN MAP

NAVIGATION (If guidance is in progress)



SETUP:
access to the "SETUP" Menu: system language* and voice functions*, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time*, display, unit and system parameters.

* Available according to model.



TRAFFIC:
access to the Traffic Menu: display of the current traffic alerts.



MEDIA:
"DVD-audio" menu
"DVD-Video" menu

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.

For maintenance of the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this handbook.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Contextual display

Pressing OK gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):



- 1 **Abort guidance**
- 1 **Repeat advice**
- 1 **Block road**
  - 2 Unblock
  - 2 More
  - 2 Less
  - 2 Calculate
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
  - 2 Browse route
- 1 **Route info**
  - 2 Show destination
  - 2 Trip info
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
    - 3 Stopovers
  - 2 Browse route
  - 2 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Voice advice**
- 1 **Route options**
  - 2 Route type
  - 2 Route dynamics
  - 2 Avoidance criteria
  - 2 Recalculate

TELEPHONE:

- 1 **End call**
- 1 **Hold call**
- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **DTMF-Tones**
- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Micro off**

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 **TA**
- 1 **Play options**
  - 2 Normal order
  - 2 Random track
  - 2 Scan
- 1 **Select media**

03 GENERAL OPERATION

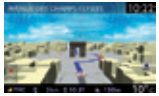
Contextual display

RADIO:

- 1 **In FM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 Radiotext
  - 2 Regional prog.
  - 2 AM
- 1 **In AM mode**
  - 2 TA
  - 2 Refresh AM list
  - 2 FM

FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 **Abort guidance / Resume guidance**
- 1 **Set destination / Add stopover**
- 1 **POIs nearby**
- 1 **Position info**



  - 2 Options
    - 3 Navigate to
    - 3 Dial
    - 3 Save position
    - 3 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 **Map Settings**
  - 2 2D Map
  - 2 2.5D Map
  - 2 3D Map
  - 2 North Up
  - 2 Heading Up
- 1 **Zoom/Scroll**

AUDIO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 **Stop**
  - 2 Group
    - 3 Group 1 .2/n
  - 2 Play options
    - 3 Normal order / Random track / Scan
- 1 **TA**
  - 2 Select media

VIDEO DVD (LONG PRESS):

1 **Play**

2 Stop

2 DVD menus

3 DVD menu

3 DVD top menu

3 List of titles

3 List of chapters

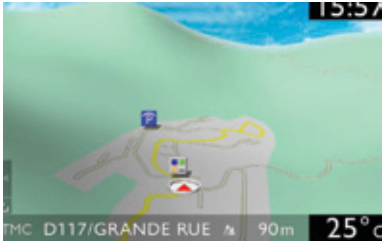
2 DVD Options

3 Audio

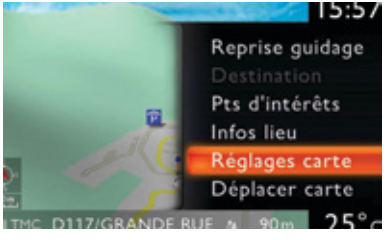
3 Subtitles

3 Angle

Examples:







- **the map setting which allows the map to be displayed flat, in perspective or in 3D.**

Flat map

Map in perspective

Map in 3D



- **configuration of the system by means of voice commands.**

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

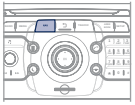
Selecting a destination

The "NAVIGATION" voice commands are listed in section 02.
During guidance, a long press on the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



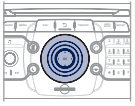
The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press OK to confirm.

Destination input

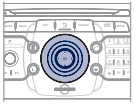


4



Select the "Address input" function and press OK to confirm.

Address input



5



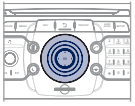
Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

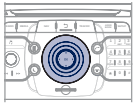
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the "Full screen map". Press OK then select "Map Settings" and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK.
Press OK to confirm.

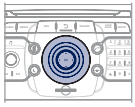


To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection.
The PEUGEOT Connect Media allows more than 4 000 contact records to be saved.

To delete a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:

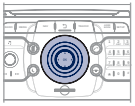
Delete entry **Delete list**

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press OK to confirm.

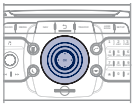
Start route guidance



10



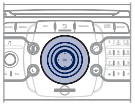
Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route", or "Optimized route" and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations", by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the "Map".

Choose from address book **Choose from last destinations**

Setting and navigating to my "Home address"

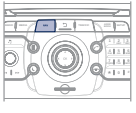
To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input" / "Address input" then "Save to address book".

1



Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu.

Navigation Menu

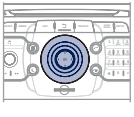


2



Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

Destination input

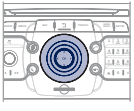


3



Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

Edit entry

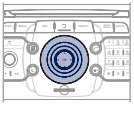


4



Select "Set as Home address" and confirm to save.

Set as home address



To start navigation towards "Home", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm.
Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

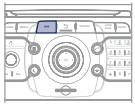
Route options

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "Map Settings" then "2D Map / 2.5D Map / 3D Map / North Up / Heading Up". The display of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress in town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3



Select the "Route options" function and press OK to confirm.

Route options



4



Select the "Route type" function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

Route type



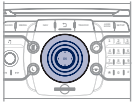
5



Select the "Route dynamics" function.

This function provides access to the "Traffic independent", "Semi-dynamic" and "Dynamic" options.

Route dynamics

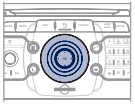


6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the "Avoid" options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

Avoidance criteria

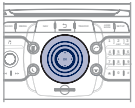


7



Turn the ring and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

Recalculate

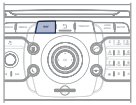


Adding a stopover

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

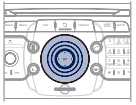
"Navigation" Menu



3 

Select the "Stopovers" function and press OK to confirm.

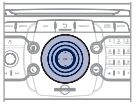
Stopovers



4 

Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

Add stopover



5 

Enter a new address, for example.

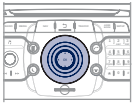
Address input



6 

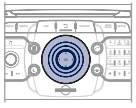
Once the new address has been entered, select "Start route guidance" and press OK to confirm.

Start route guidance



7 

Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8 Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select "Recalculate" and press OK to confirm.

To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select "Rearrange route" (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with "Recalculate").

Searching for points of interest (POI)

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu



3 

Select the "POI search" function and press OK to confirm.

POI search



4 

Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

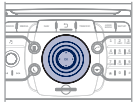
POI nearby



5 

Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

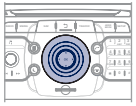
POI near destination



6 

Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI in city



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 

Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

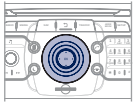
POI in country



8 

Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI near route



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

List of principal points of interest (POI)

- Service station
- LPG station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Refreshment area
- Picnic area
- Cafeteria

- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Tennis court
- Swimming pool
- Golf course
- Winter sports resort
- Theatre

- Cinema
- Theme parks
- Hospital
- Pharmacy
- Police station
- School
- Post office
- Museum
- Tourist information
- Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Updating POIs

1



Download the "POIs" update file onto an SD card or USB memory stick from the Internet. This service is available at http://peugeot.navigation.com.

i

The files must be copied to the root on the chosen medium.

2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB memory stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB port.

3

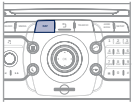


Press NAV, select Navigation Menu, then "Settings", then "Update personal POI".

Navigation Menu

Settings

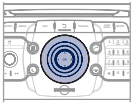
Update personal POI



4



Select the medium ("USB" or "SD-Card") used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.
The system restarts.
The POIs version can be found in the SETUP \ System menu.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Spoken instruction settings

1



When the navigation is displayed in the screen, press OK then select or deselect "Voice advice" to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions.

Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



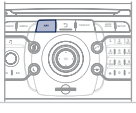
The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

Point of interest and risk area settings

1



Press the NAV button.

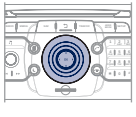


2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Navigation Menu

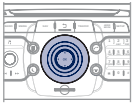


3



Select the "Settings" function and press OK to confirm.

Settings

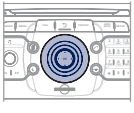


4



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI categories on Map

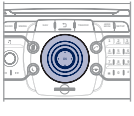


5



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

Set parameters for risk areas



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Configure the filtering and display of TMC messages

The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages with GPS Navigation provide traffic information in real time.

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press OK to confirm.

Traffic Menu



3



Select "Select preferred list" and press OK to confirm.

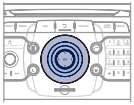


4



Select the filter of your choice:

Messages on route
All warning messages
Only warnings on route
All messages

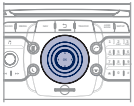


5



Select "Geo. Filter".

Geo. Filter



When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographic filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographic filter follows the movement of the vehicle.

The filters are independent and their results are concealed.

We recommend:

- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Principal TMC symbols

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

Receiving TA messages

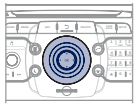
RDS TA - the station transmits TA messages.

RDS TA - the station does not transmit TA messages.

RDS - TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

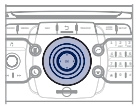
1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



06 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

Selecting a station

1

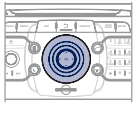


Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.



Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.

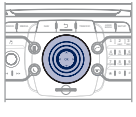




While listening to the radio, press buttons ◄◄ and ►► for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the "RADIO" screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored.

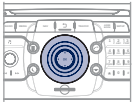
Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - Regional mode

1



When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



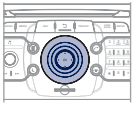
2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

TA
RDS
Radiotext
Regional prog.
AM



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD card / USB player

Information and advice

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

Connecting an iPod:

To play MP3 type files, connect the iPod using the USB port (limited functions).

To play ITunes files, connect the iPod using the auxiliary socket (AUX).

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted to FAT 32.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.

It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

During play, exit the "SD-Card" or "USB" source before removing the SD card or the USB memory stick from its port.

To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB memory stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Selecting / Playing

CD, MP3 / WMA CD, MP3 / WMA SD card / USB player

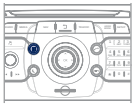
MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

1 Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB port. Play begins automatically.

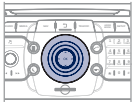


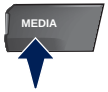
i The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Media" Menu.

2  Press this button.

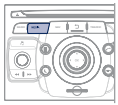


3  When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



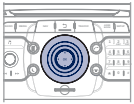
4 

Press the MEDIA button.



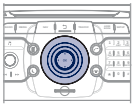
5  Press the MEDIA button again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"Media" Menu

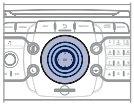


6  Select the "Select media" function and press OK to confirm.

Select media



7  Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



i The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Jukebox

Copying a CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card to the hard disk

When copying is in progress, switching off the ignition will interrupt the process but it will resume directly when the ignition is switched on again.

1 Insert an audio / MP3 CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card.



! Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2 

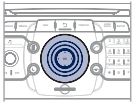
Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



3 

Select "Jukebox management" then "Add files" and press OK at each step to confirm.

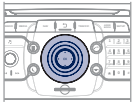
Add files



4 

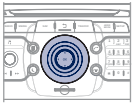
Select "Add files from MP3-Disc" for example and press OK to validate.

Add files from MP3-Disc



5 

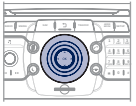
Select the tracks required then "Rip selection" or select all of the tracks using "Rip all".



6 

Select "[New folder]" to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

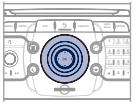
[New folder]



7 

"Do you want to change the names of the tracks that will be ripped?": select "Yes" to change them or "No".

Yes **No**



8 

To copy an MP3 CD, then select "Real time ripping", "Fast ripping" / "High quality (192 kbit/sec)" or "Standard quality (128 kbit/sec)" then select "Start ripping".



9 

Confirm the warning message by pressing "OK" to start the copy.

OK



07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

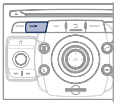
Jukebox
Renaming or deleting an album

Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track / folder.

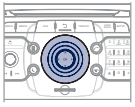
1 Activate the playing of a source other than the Jukebox (CD, radio, etc...).

2 

Press the MEDIA button.



3 
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



4 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.

Jukebox management



5 
Select "Modify content" and press OK confirm.

Modify content



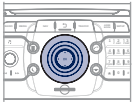
Playing the jukebox

1 

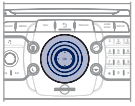
Press the MEDIA button.
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



2 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.



3 
Select "Play options" and press OK to confirm.
Select "Folders & Files" or "Playlists" then press OK to confirm.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.
Media Menu> Jukebox management> Create new playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The "Playlists" play mode must then be selected.

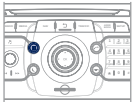
07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Viewing a video DVD

1 Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2 If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the "MEDIA" screen which displays the DVD screen.



3 Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD menu at any time, or to the functions of the Media Menu which adjust the video (brightness/ contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the ⏭ or ⏮ button.

Select the video source required ("DVD-Video", "External device (AV)"). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

Using an external device (AUX)

Audio / Video / RCA cable not supplied

1 Connect the portable device (MP3 player, camcorder, camera…) to the RCA sockets (white and red for audio; yellow for video) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

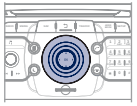
2 Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the Media Menu function and press OK to confirm.



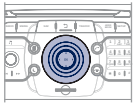
If the external input is not activated, select "Ext. Device (Aux) management" to activate it.

3 Select "Select media" then "External device (AV)" and press OK to activate it.

External device



4 Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



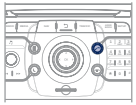
The display and management of the controls is via the portable device.

Choosing between the Bluetooth telephone / internal telephone

1



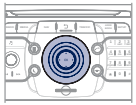
To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP.



2



Select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then choose between "Telephone off", "Use Bluetooth phone" or "Use internal phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



!

The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time.

In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

Pairing a Bluetooth telephone / First connection

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth device used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.
Visit www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

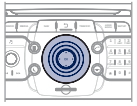
1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone instructions).



2 Press the CALL button.

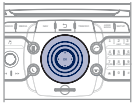


3 If no telephone has been paired, the system prompts you to "Connect phone". Select "Yes" and press OK to confirm.

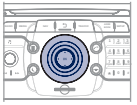


4 Select "Search phone" and press OK to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

Search phone



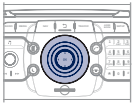
5 Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen of the system.



Once the telephone has been connected, the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

To pair another telephone, press the TEL button, then select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then "Connect Bluetooth phone" then select the telephone required.
Press OK at each step to confirm.





Pairing can be started from the telephone (refer to the telephone instructions).

To delete a pairing, press TEL, select "Connect phone" then "Delete pairing".

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

Connecting a Bluetooth telephone

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth device used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

Once the telephone has been connected, the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is visible to all.



2  Press the PICK UP button.



The list of telephones connected previously (maximum of 4) appears in the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required then select "Connect phone" for a new connection. Select "Delete pairing" to cancel the connection to the telephone.

Using the internal telephone with a SIM card

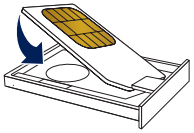
If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

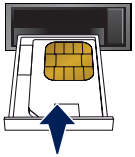
1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.

2





Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.

i

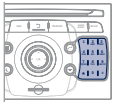
For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

4



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

Remember PIN

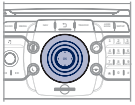


When entering your PIN code, tick the "Remember PIN" tab to allow use of the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

5



The system asks "Do you want to switch to the internal phone?", select "Yes" if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list.

This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

08 USING THE TELEPHONE

Operating the telephone while driving is prohibited. It is recommended that you park safely or use in preference the steering mounted controls.

Receiving a call

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

2 

Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.

Yes **No**



The PICK UP button accepts, the HANG UP button rejects the incoming call.

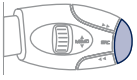
3 

To hang up, press the HANG UP button or press OK and select "End call" then confirm by pressing OK.

End call



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



Making a call

1 

Press the PICK UP button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under Phone menu. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

2 

Select the Phone menu function and press OK to confirm.

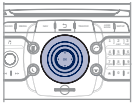
Phone menu



3 

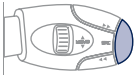
Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The PEUGEOT Connect Media can record up to 4 096 entries.

It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.



Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to open the address book.

09 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

MAIN FUNCTION

- **OPTION A**
  - **option A1**
  - **option A2**
- **OPTION B...**

"Traffic" Menu

- **Select preferred list**
  - **Messages on route**
  - **Only warnings on route**
  - **All warning messages**
  - **All messages**
  - **Geo. Filter**
    - Deactivate PIN
    - Within 2 miles (3 km)
    - Within 3 miles (5 km)
    - Within 6 miles (10 km)
    - Within 30 miles (50 km)
- **Read out settings**
  - **On confirmation**
  - **Incoming messages**
- **TMC station information**

"Media" Menu

- **Select media**
  - **Audio CD/ MP3-Disc / DVD-Audio /DVD-Video**
  - **Jukebox (Folders & Files)**
  - **SD-Card**
  - **USB**
  - **External device (audio/AV)**
- **Jukebox management**
  - **Add files**
  - **Create folder**
  - **Modify content**
  - **Edit playlist**
  - **Play options**
    - Folders & Files
    - Playlists
  - **Memory capacity**
- **Sound settings**
  - **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu details of which are shown on the next page.**
- **Video settings**
  - **Aspect ratio**
  - **Menu language**
  - **Display**
    - Brightness
    - Contrast
    - Colour

- **AUX standard**
- **Reset video settings**
- **Ext. Device (Aux) management**
- **Off/ Audio /Audio and Video (AV)**



"Radio" Menu

- **Waveband**
  - **FM**
  - **AM**
- **Manual tune**
- **Sound settings**
  - **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu below.**

"Sound settings" Menu

- **Balance / Fader**
- **Bass / Treble**
- **Equalizer**
  - **Linear**
  - **Classic**
  - **Jazz**
  - **Rock/Pop**
  - **Techno**
  - **Vocal**
- **Mute rear speakers**
- **Loudness**
- **Speed dependent volume**
- **Reset sound settings**



"Navigation" Menu

- **Abort guidance/Resume guidance**
- **Destination input**
  - **Address input**
    - Country
    - City
    - Street
    - House number
    - Start route guidance
    - Postal code
    - Save to address book
    - Intersection
    - City district
    - Geo position
    - Map
  - **Navigate HOME**
  - **Choose from last destinations**
  - **Choose from address book**
- **Stopovers**
  - **Add stopover**
    - Address input
    - Navigate HOME
    - Choose from address book
    - Choose from last destinations
  - **Rearrange route**
  - **Replace stopover**
  - **Delete stopover**

- **Recalculate**
  - Fast route
  - Short route
  - Optimized route
- **POI search**
  - **POI nearby**
  - **POI near destination**
  - **POI in city**
  - **POI in country**
  - **POI near route**
- **Route options**
  - **Route type**
    - POI near destination
    - Short route
    - Optimized route
    - Subscr. service
- **Settings**
  - **Route dynamics**
    - Traffic independent
    - Semi-dynamic
    - Dynamic
  - **Avoidance criteria**
    - Avoid motorways
    - Avoid toll roads
    - Avoid tunnels
    - Avoid ferries
  - **Recalculate**



"Address book" Menu

- **Create new entry**
- **Show memory status**
- **Export address book**
- **Delete all voice entries**
- **Delete all entries**
- **Delete folder "My Addresses"**



"Phone" menu

- **Dial number**
- **Dial from address book**
- **Call lists**
- **Messages**
- **Select phone**
  - **Telephone off**
  - **Use Bluetooth phone**
  - **Use internal phone**
  - **Connect Bluetooth phone**
    - Search phone
      - Disconnect phone
      - Rename phone
      - Delete pairing
      - Delete all pairings
      - Show details

- 2 **Settings**
  - 3 **Automatic answering system**
  - 3 **Select ring tone**
  - 3 **Phone / Ring tone volume**
  - 3 **Enter mailbox number**
  - 3 **Internal phone settings**
  - 3 **Automatically accept call**
  - 3 **Signal waiting call (?)**
  - 3 **Show status**
  - 3 **Activate waiting call**
  - 3 **Deactivate waiting call**
  - 3 **Call forward (?)**
  - 3 **Show status**
  - 3 **Activate call forward**
  - 3 **Deactivate call forward**
  - 3 **Suppress own number**
  - 3 **Select network**
  - 3 **Set network automatically**
  - 3 **Set network manually**
  - 3 **Search for networks**
  - 3 **PIN settings**
  - 3 **Change PIN**
    - 4 Activate PIN
    - 4 Deactivate PIN
  - 3 **Remember PIN**
  - 3 **SIM-card memory status**



1 "SETUP" Menu

- 2 **Language & Speech**
  - 3 **Menu language**
    - 4 Deutsch
    - 4 English
    - 4 Español
    - 4 Français
    - 4 Italiano
    - 4 Nederlands
    - 4 Polski
    - 4 Portuguese
  - 3 **Voice control**
    - 4 Voice control active
    - 4 Tutorial
      - 5 Basics
      - 5 Examples
      - 5 Tips
    - 4 Speaker adaptation
      - 5 New speaker adaptation
      - 5 Delete speaker adaptation
  - 3 **Voice output volume**
- 2 **Date & Time**
  - 3 **Set date & time**
  - 3 **Date format**
  - 3 **Time format**

- **Display**
  - **Brightness**
  - **Colour**
    - Steel
    - blue light (only in day mode)
    - Orange Ray
    - Blue Flame
  - **Map colour**
    - Day mode for map
    - Night mode for map
    - Auto. Day/Night for map

- **Units**
  - **Temperature**
    - Celsius
    - Fahrenheit
  - **Metric / Imperial**
    - km
    - Miles
- **System**
  - **Factory reset**
  - **Software version**
  - **Automatic scrolling**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D).

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "Linear" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press RADIO, select Radio Menu then "Waveband" to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
"TA" is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.
The "Risk areas" audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate the audible warning on Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume is set to minimum.	Increase the volume of the alert when passing a "Risk area".
Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?	No, as certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.	Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the exclusion criteria on the Navigation Menu ("Route options" - "Avoidance criteria").
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D), to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
The system does not play the DVD.	The region protection may not be compatible.	Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.
I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.	The wrong source is selected.	Change the active source to CD.
	The CD is copy-protected.	It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.	Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.
	The SIM card used is a twin card.	Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.
I cannot update the risk area POIs.	The Navigation Menu - "Update personal POI" is not displayed.	Check that the medium used for the update (SD card or USB memory stick) is inserted correctly.
	An error message is displayed at the end of the procedure.	- Start the procedure again in full. - Consult a PEUGEOT dealer if the problem persists. - Check that the data on the MEDIUM is supplied by an official partner of PEUGEOT.
The voice frequencies (DTMF) are not active when I am communicating and I press numbers on the keypad.	The numeric buttons on the keypad are only active for calls if the display is in telephone mode.	To activate them, press the MODE button until the telephone is displayed on the screen.
An risk area which does not concern me is displayed on the screen.	The risk areas are displayed near a point defined on the map and in relation to a direction of travel.	The alert may be triggered when travelling under a road or near a road which is a Risk area.

400
400
500
400
400
500



PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6)

SATELLITE NAVIGATION SYSTEM
MULTIMEDIA BLUETOOTH
TELEPHONE AUDIO SYSTEM

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

CONTENTS

01	First steps - Control panel	p.	320
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	322
03	General operation	p.	323
04	Navigation - Guidance	p.	325
05	Traffic information	p.	338
06	Using the telephone	p.	341
07	Radio	p.	351
08	Music media players	p.	356
09	Audio settings	p.	362
10	Configuration	p.	363
11	Screen menu map	p.	364
	Frequently asked questions	p.	368

01 FIRST STEPS

Selection and confirmation OK dial:

Selection of an item on the screen or in a list or a menu, then confirmation with a short press.

Other than for menus and lists, a short press displays a contextual menu depending on the current screen.

Rotation with map displayed: zoom the map scale in and out.

Open the "**Configuration**" menu.

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the navigation demonstration mode.

Select:

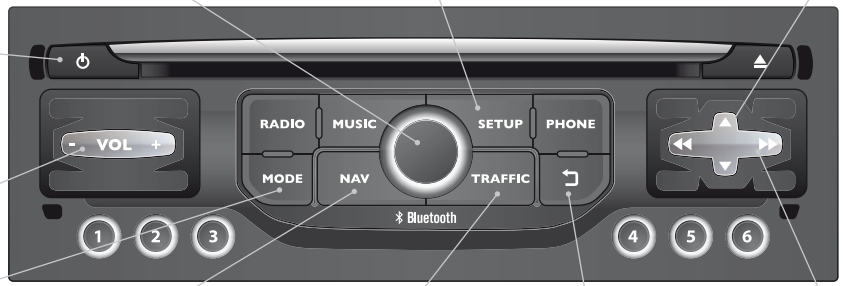
- the previous/next line in a list or menu.
- the previous / next media folder.
- step by step selection of the previous/ next radio frequency.
- the previous / next MP3 folder.

Move up/down, in "**Move the map**" mode.

Short press without the engine running: on / off.

Short press with the engine running: audio source off / restore.

Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including TA messages and navigation instructions).



MODE button: Selection of the type of permanent display.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Access to the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu and display the recent destinations.

Open the "**Traffic information**" menu and display the current traffic alerts.

Abandon the current operation, up one level in the menu.

Long press: return to the permanent display.

Select:

- the next lower / higher radio frequency automatically.
- the previous / next CD track, MP3 track or media.
- the left / right of the screen when a menu is displayed.

Move left / right in "**Move the map**" mode.

01 FIRST STEPS

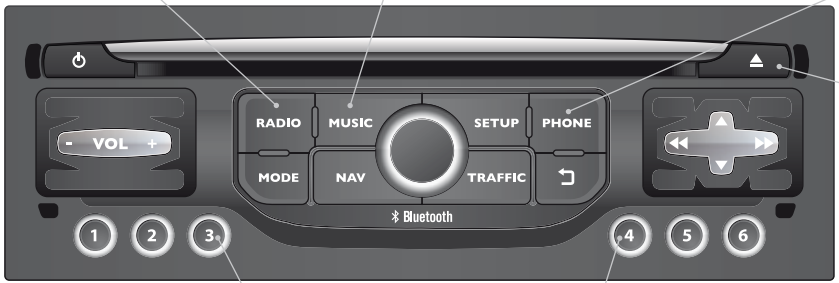
Access to the "**RADIO**" menu and display the list of stations received.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the radio tuner source.

Access to the "**MUSIC**" menu, and display of the CD/MP3/ Apple® tracks and folders.

Long press: display the audio settings screen for the "**MEDIA**" (CD/USB/iPod/Streaming/AUX) sources.

Open the "**Telephone**" menu and display the list of recent calls or accept an incoming call.



Continuous press: reinitialisation of the system.

Short press: select pre-set radio station.

Long press: pre-set the current station.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

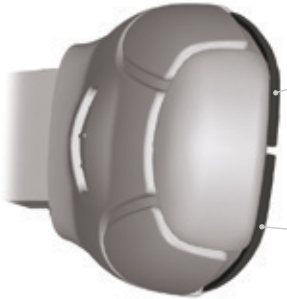
RADIO: change to the next radio station in the list.
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD: select the next track.
CD: continuous press: fast forward play.

SRC/TEL button:
change the audio source,
start a call from the address book,
call/end call on the telephone,
press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.



RADIO: change to the previous radio station in the list.
Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD: select the previous track.
CD: continuous press: fast reverse.

RADIO: select the previous/next preset station.
Select the next entry in the address book.



Volume increase.

Volume decrease.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

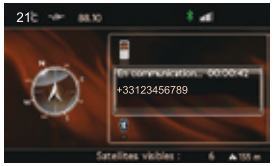
MODE

Press the **MODE** button several times in succession for access to the following displays:

"**RADIO**"



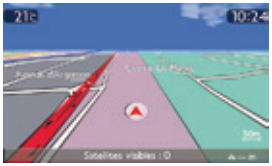
"**TELEPHONE**"
(If conversation in progress)



MODE



"**MAP IN WINDOW**"
(If navigation guidance in progress)



"**FULL SCREEN MAP**"

SETUP

SETUP: PARAMETERS
date and time, display configuration, sound, vehicle settings.

RADIO

MUSIC

Changing the audio source:
RADIO: RADIO broadcasts.
MUSIC: playing MUSIC.

For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.

For the details of the menus, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

03 GENERAL OPERATION

Display according to context



A press on the knob gives access to short-cut menus according to the display in the screen.

RADIO:

- 1 Change waveband
  - 2 FM
  - 2 DAB
  - 2 AM
- 1 Service announcements
  - 2 Traffic anouncements (TA)
  - 2 Information
  - 2 Divertissement
  - 2 Special or Urgent

TELEPHONE (call in progress):

- 1 Private mode
- 1 Put call on hold
- 1 DTMF ring tones
- 1 Hang up

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS, CD or USB (according to media):

Play modes:

- 1 Normal
- 1 Random
- 1 Random on all media
- 1 Repetition

FULL SCREEN MAP OR IN A NEW WINDOW:

- 1 Stop / Restore guidance
- 1 Select destination
  - 2 Enter an address
  - 2 Directory
  - 2 GPS coordinates
- 1 Divert route
- 1 Move the map
  - 2 Info. on location
  - 2 Select as destination
  - 2 Select as stage
  - 2 Save this place (contacts)
  - 2 Quit map mode
- 1 Guidance criteria

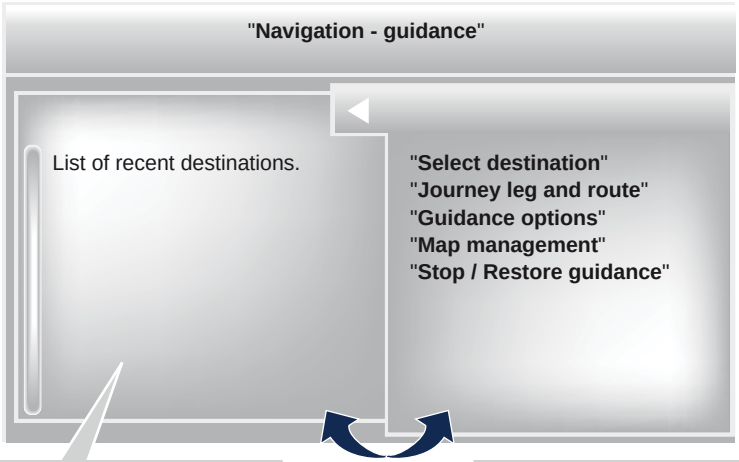
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Access to the "NAVIGATION" menu



Press **NAV**.

A short press on the end of the lighting control stalk repeats the last navigation message.

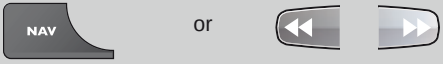


To make full use of all of the functions of your navigation system, update the mapping regularly. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or order your mapping update at http://peugeot.navigation.com

To delete the list of recent destinations, select "**Guidance options**" in the navigation menu then select "**Delete last destinations**" and confirm. Select "**Yes**" then confirm.

Deleting just one destination is not possible.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



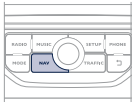
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Selecting a destination

Towards a new destination

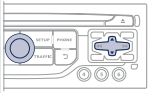
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



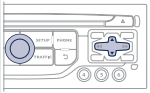
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Enter an address**" and confirm.



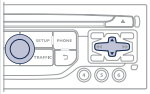
3 

Select the "**Country**" function then confirm.



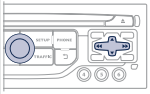
4 

Select the "**Town**" or "**Post code**" function then confirm.



5 

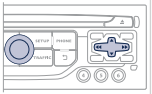
Select the letters in the name of the town or the characters in a post code one at a time, confirming each one with the knob.



6 

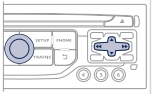
Selection the town from the list offered, then confirm

A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed directly by selecting and confirming "**List**" in the screen.



7 

If possible, enter the "**Road**" and "**N°/X**" information in the same way.

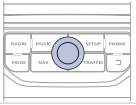


Select "**Archive**" to save the address entered in a contact file.

After about 60 seconds with no address entered, the system returns to the last home page; to return to the current input, start again with steps 1 and 2 then press again to find the current input.

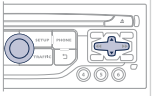
8 

Confirm "**OK**" to start guidance.



9 

Select the guidance criteria: "**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**" or optimised "**Distance/Time**", then select the desired restriction criteria: "**With tolls**", "**With Ferry**", or "**Traffic info**" then confirm "**OK**".

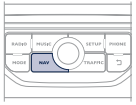


04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards a recent destination

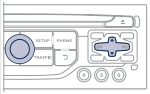
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

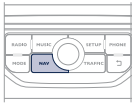
Select the desired destination and confirm to start guidance.



Delete recent destinations

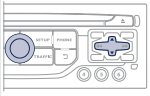
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



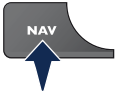
2 

Select "**Options**" and confirm and then "**Delete recent destinations**" and confirm.

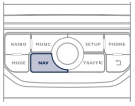


Towards a contact in the contacts directory

Navigation towards a contact is only possible if it has an address entered in the audio navigation system.

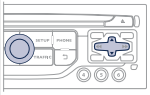
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



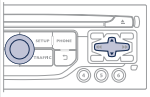
2 

Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**Directory**" and confirm.



3 

Selection the desired destination from your contacts and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



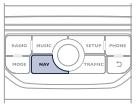
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Towards GPS coordinates

1



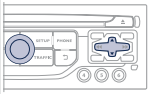
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



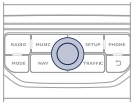
Select "**Select destination**" and confirm, then select "**GPS coordinates**" and confirm.



3



Enter the GPS coordinates and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.

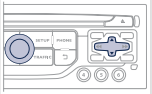


Towards a point on the map

1



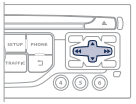
With the map displayed, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Move the map**" and confirm.



2



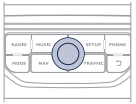
Move the cursor using the control to identify the desired destination.



3



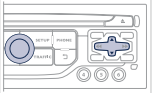
Press **OK** to display the contextual menu for "**Move the map**" mode.



4



Select "**Select as destination**" or "**Select as stage**" and confirm.

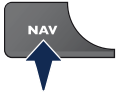


04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

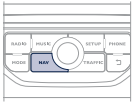
Towards points of interest (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1



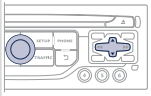
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select the "**Enter an address**" function and confirm, then select **Select destination** and confirm.



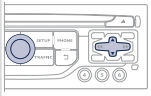
3



To select a POI close to your current location, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**Around the current place**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a stage on the route, select "**POI**" and confirm, then select "**On the route**" and confirm.

To select a POI as a destination, first enter the country and town (see "Towards a new destination"), select "**POI**" and confirm, finally select "**Near**" and confirm.

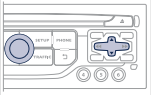


Select "**Search by Name**" to search for POIs by name and not by proximity.

4



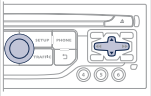
Search for POIs in the categories suggested in the following pages.



5



Select the POI and confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



List of principal points of interest (POI)


Service station


Garage


PEUGEOT


Covered car park


Car park


Rest area


Hotel


Restaurant


Cafeteria


Bed and breakfast


Airport


Railway station


Bus station


Port


Industrial estate


Supermarket


Vending machine


Sports complex, sports centre, sports ground


Swimming pool


Winter sports resort


Cinema


Theme parks


Hospital, Chemist, Vet


Police station


School


Town hall


Post office


Museum, Culture, Theatre, Historic monument


Tourist information, Tourist attraction


Risk areas / Danger areas*

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on:
http://peugeot.navigation.com.

* According to availability in the country.

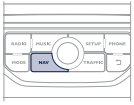
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Settings for risk area / danger area alerts

1



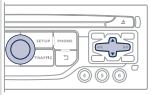
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm, then select "**Set parameters for risk areas**" and confirm.



3

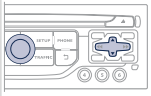


Select:

- "Visual alert"
- "Audible alert"
- "Alert only in guidance"
- "Overspeed alarm only".

The choice of time of notification defines how long in advance that Risk area warnings are given.

Select "**OK**" to confirm the screen.



!

These functions are only available if risk areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

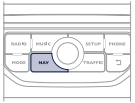
The detailed procedure for updating risk area POIs can be found at http://peugeot.navigation.com.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Adding a stage

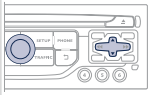
1 

Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2 

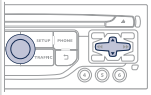
Select "**Journey leg and route**" then confirm.



3 

Select "**Add a stage**" then confirm.

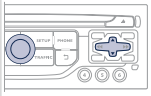
The address of the stage is entered as a destination, by "**Enter an address**", a contact in "**Directory**", or "**Previous destinations**".



4 

Select "**Close to**" a route passing close to the stage or "**Strict**" for a route passing through the stage.

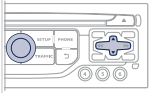
Confirm "**OK**" to start the guidance, and give a general indication of the guidance route.



Organising stages

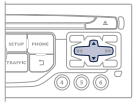
1 

To organise stages, carry out operations 1 to 2 again, then select "**Order/delete journey legs**" and confirm.



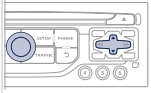
2 

Select the stage that you want to move in the order.



3 

Select and confirm to save the modifications.



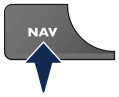
Select "**Delete**" to delete the stage.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

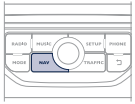
Route options

Calculation criteria

1



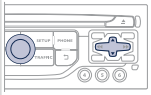
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



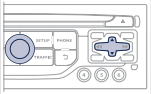
3



Select "**Define calculation criteria**" and confirm.

This function allows modification of:

- the guidance criteria: ("**Fastest route**", "**Shortest route**", "**Distance/Time**"),
- the exclusion criteria: ("**With tolls**" or "**With Ferry**"),
- traffic avoidance: ("**Traffic info**").



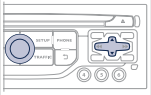
i

If traffic avoidance (Traffic info) is selected, the system suggests an alternative route if there is a delay on the guidance route.

4



Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.



04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

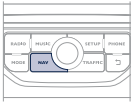
Map management

Selecting the points of interest displayed on the map

1



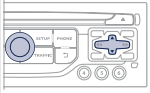
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



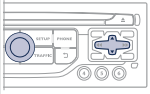
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



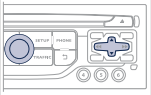
Select "**Map details**" and confirm.



4



Select from the various categories the ones that you want to display on the screen.

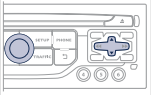


Select "**Default**" to have only "**Filling stations, garages**" and "**Risk areas**" appear on the map (if installed in the system).

5



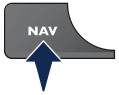
Select "**OK**" then confirm and select "**OK**" again then confirm to save the modifications.



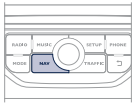
04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

Map orientation

1



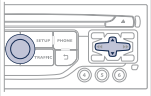
Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



2



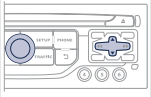
Select "**Map management**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Map orientation**" and confirm.

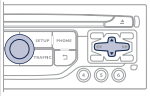


4



Select:

- "**Vehicle direction**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**North direction**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



The colour of the map, different from the day and night mode, is configured in the "**SETUP**" menu.

Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

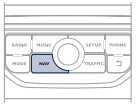
Navigation voice synthesis

Adjusting the volume / Deactivation

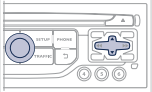
The volume of messages can be adjusted during the transmission of the message using the volume adjustment control.

The volume setting of guidance messages is also accessible via the "**SETUP**" / "**Voice synthesis**" menu.

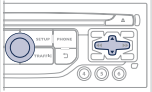
1 Press **NAV** to display the "**Navigation - guidance**" menu.



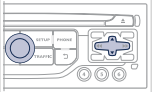
2 Select "**Guidance options**" and confirm.



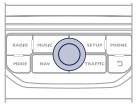
3 Select "**Set speech synthesis**" and confirm.



4 Select the volume graph and confirm.

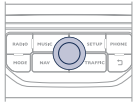


5 Adjust the volume to the desired level and confirm.



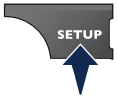
Select "**Deactivate**" to deactivate voice messages.

6 Select "**OK**" and press the dial to confirm.

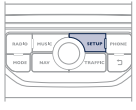


Male voice / Female voice

1



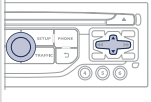
Press **SETUP** to display the configuration menu.



2



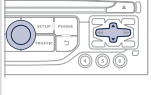
Select "**Voice synthesis**" and confirm.



3



Select "**Select male voice**" or "**Select female voice**" then confirm "**Yes**" to activate a male or female voice. The system restarts.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Access to the "TRAFFIC INFORMATION" menu



Press "**TRAFFIC**".

"**Traffic information**"

List of TMC messages in order of distance from the vehicle.

"**Geographic filter**"
"**Select TMC station**" (automatic, manual)
"**Display/Do not display messages**"

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

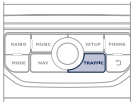
Configure the filtering and display of TMC messages

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages with GPS Navigation provide traffic information in real time.

1

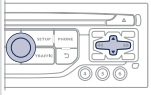


Press the **TRAFFIC** button to display the "**Traffic information**" menu.



2

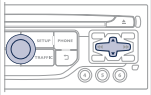
Select the "**Geographic filter**" function and confirm.



3

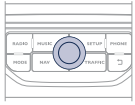
The system offers a choice of:

- "**Retain all the messages**",
  or
- "**Retain the messages**"
  - "**Around the vehicle**", (confirm the mileage to modify and select the distance),
  - "**On the route**".



4

Confirm "**OK**" to save the modifications.



i

We recommend:

- a filter on the route and
- a filter around the vehicle of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.



05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Principal TMC symbols

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow / ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

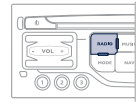
- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

Receiving TA messages

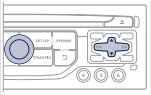
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

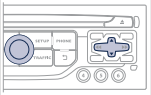
Press **RADIO** to display the menu.



2 
Select "**Service announcements**" then confirm.



3 
Activate or deactivate "**TA**" then confirm.



The volume setting for TA messages can be adjusted only during the transmission of this type of alert.



Activate or deactivate the function at any time by pressing the button.
During a message, press the button to interrupt it.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Access to the "TELEPHONE" menu



Press this button.

"Telephone"

List of recent calls sent and received with the telephone connected to the system.

"**Dial**"
"**Directory of contacts**"
"**Contacts management**"
"**Phone functions**"
"**Bluetooth functions**"
"**Hang up**"

In the top bar of the permanent display

- No telephone connected.
- Telephone connected.
- Incoming call.
- Outgoing call.
- Synchronisation of contacts in progress.
- Telephone call in progress.

To make a call, select a number in the list and confirm "**OK**" to start the call.

Connecting a different telephone deletes the list of recent calls.

Go from the list to the menu (left/right).

PHONE or

Pairing a Bluetooth telephone
First connection

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio unit must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.peugeot.co.uk (services).

Quick procedure from the telephone

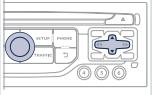
1 In the Bluetooth menu of your telephone, select the name "PEUGEOT" from the list of devices detected.



2 Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



3 Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

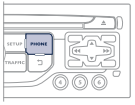


Procedure from the system

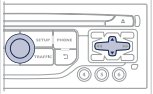
1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



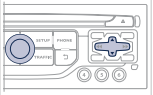
2 PHONE Press this button.



3 Select "**Bluetooth functions**" and confirm.



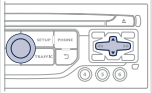
4 Select "**Peripherals search**" and confirm.
The list of peripheral devices detected is displayed. Wait until the "**Connect**" button is available.



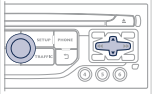
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

5 Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list of devices detected then confirm



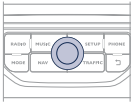
6 Select "**Connect**" and confirm.



7 The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Hands-free mode**" (telephone only),
- in "**Audio**" mode (streaming: playing music files on the telephone),
- or "**All**" (for selection of both modes).

Select "**OK**" and confirm.



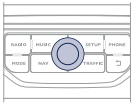
The "**Hands-free mode**" should be used in preference if "Streaming" is not desired.

The ability of the system to connect in only one mode depends on the telephone. The two modes may both connect by default.

8 Enter a minimum 4 figure code in the telephone and confirm.



9 Enter the same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.



Then accept automatic connection on the telephone to allow the telephone to reconnect automatically every time the vehicle is started.

Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

On return to the vehicle,the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated and visible).

To modify the automatic connection mode, remove the pairing and pair the telephone again with the desired mode.

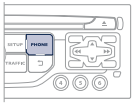
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Directory configuration / Synchronisation with the telephone

1



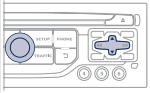
Press **PHONE** then select "**Contacts management**" and confirm.



2a



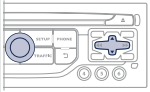
Select "**New contact**" to enter a new contact.



2b



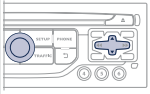
Select "**Sort by Name/First name**" or "**Sort by First name/Name**" to choose the order in which they appear.



2c



Select "**Delete all contacts**" to delete the contacts saved in the system.

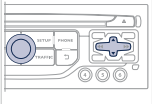


2d



Select "**Import all the entries**" to import all the contacts in the telephone and save them in the system.

Once imported, a contact remains visible whatever telephone is connected.

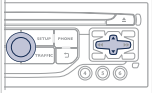


2e



Select "**Synchronization options**":

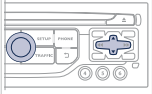
- No synchronization: only the contacts saved in the system (always present).
- Display telephone contacts: only the contacts saved in the telephone.
- Display SIM card contacts: only the contacts saved on the SIM card.
- Display all phone contacts: contacts on the SIM card and in the telephone.



2f



Select "**Contact mem. status**" to see the number of contacts saved in the system or imported, and the free memory.

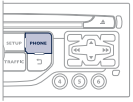


06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Editing, importing or deleting a contact

1 

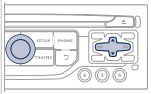
Press **PHONE** then select "**Directory of contacts**" and confirm.



2

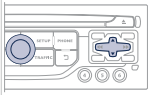
Select "**Search**", then turn the knob to choose in numerical or alphabetical order a group of contacts from the entries made previously, then confirm.

Go to the list of contacts, select the desired contact then confirm.



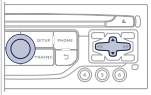
3a

Select "**Open**" to view a contact on the telephone or modify a contact saved in the system.



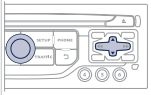
3b

Select "**Import**" to copy a contact from the telephone to the system.



3c

Select "**Delete**" to delete a contact recorded in the system.



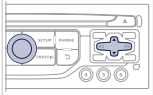
i It is not possible to modify or delete contacts in the telephone or the SIM card via the Bluetooth connection.

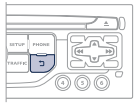
i Once the contact has been imported, the Bluetooth symbol disappears, replaced by the telephone symbol which shows that the contact has been saved in the system.

i In the "**Directory of contacts**" menu, the import and deletion of contacts is done one by one.

4

Select **OK** or press the back button to exit this menu.





06 USING THE TELEPHONE

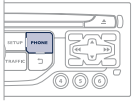
Making a call

Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving. We recommended that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

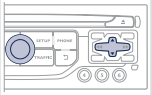
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

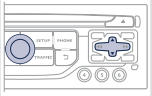
Select "**Dial**" then confirm.



3 

Dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad selecting each number in turn.

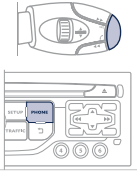
Confirm "**OK**" to make the call.



Calling a contact

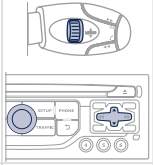
1 

Press **TEL** or twice on **PHONE**.



2 

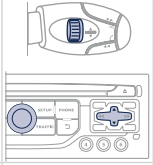
Select "**Directory of contacts**" then confirm.



3 

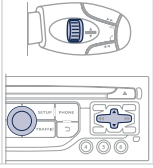
Select the desired contact and confirm.

If access was via the **PHONE** button, select "**Call**" and confirm.



4 

Select the number and confirm to start the call.



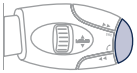
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Calling a recently entered number

1



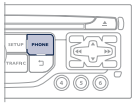
Press **TEL**, select "**Call list**" and confirm,



or



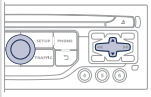
Press **PHONE** to display the calls log.



2



Select the desired number and confirm.



To erase the calls log, press **PHONE** twice, select "**Phone functions**" and confirm then select "**Delete calls log**" and confirm.

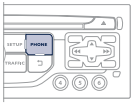
It is always possible to start a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle as a safety measure.

Ending a call

1a



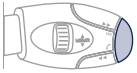
Press **PHONE** then select "**OK**" to end the call.



1b



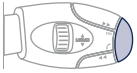
Or make a long press on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1c



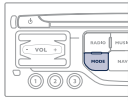
Or make two short presses on **TEL** at the steering mounted controls.



1d

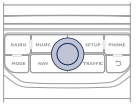


Or press the **MODE** button, as many times as necessary, until the telephone screen is displayed.





Press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu then select "**Hang up**" and confirm.



06 USING THE TELEPHONE

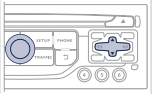
Receiving a call

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2

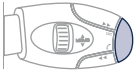


"**Yes**" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press "**OK**" to accept the call.
Select "**No**" and confirm to reject the call.





A short press on **TEL** accepts an incoming call.
A long press on **TEL** rejects an incoming call.



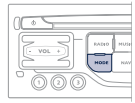
06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Options during a call*

1

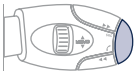


During a call, press the **MODE** button several times to select display of the telephone screen, then press "**OK**" to open the contextual menu.





Or make a short press on this button.

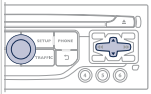


2a



Select "**Private mode**" and confirm to take the call on the handset.

Or select "**Hands-free mode**" and confirm to take the call via the vehicle's speakers.

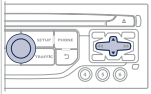


2b



Select "**Put call on hold**" and confirm to put the current call on hold.

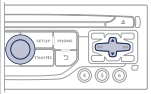
Or select "**Resume the call**" and confirm to resume the call on hold.



2c



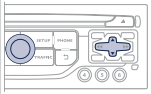
Select "**DTMF ring tones**" to use the numerical keypad, so as to navigate through the menu of an interactive vocal server.



2d

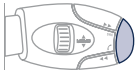


Select "**Hang up**" to end the call.





It is possible to hold a 3-way conference call by making 2 calls in succession*. Select "**Conference mode call**" in the contextual menu accessible using this button.



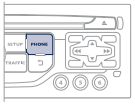
* Depending on the compatibility of the phone and your service plan.

06 USING THE TELEPHONE

Managing paired telephones

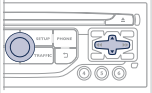
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



2 

Select "**Bluetooth functions**".



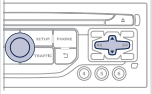
3 

Select "**List of the paired peripherals**" and confirm.

It is possible to:

- "**Connect**" or "**Disconnect**" the selected telephone,
- delete the pairing of the selected telephone.

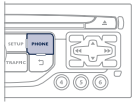
It is also possible to select all pairings.



Changing the ringtone

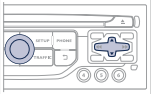
1 

Press **PHONE** twice.



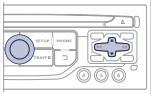
2 

Select "**Phone functions**" and confirm.



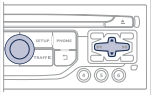
3 

Select "**Ring options**" and confirm.



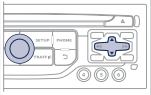
4 

You can adjust the volume and the type of ringtone.



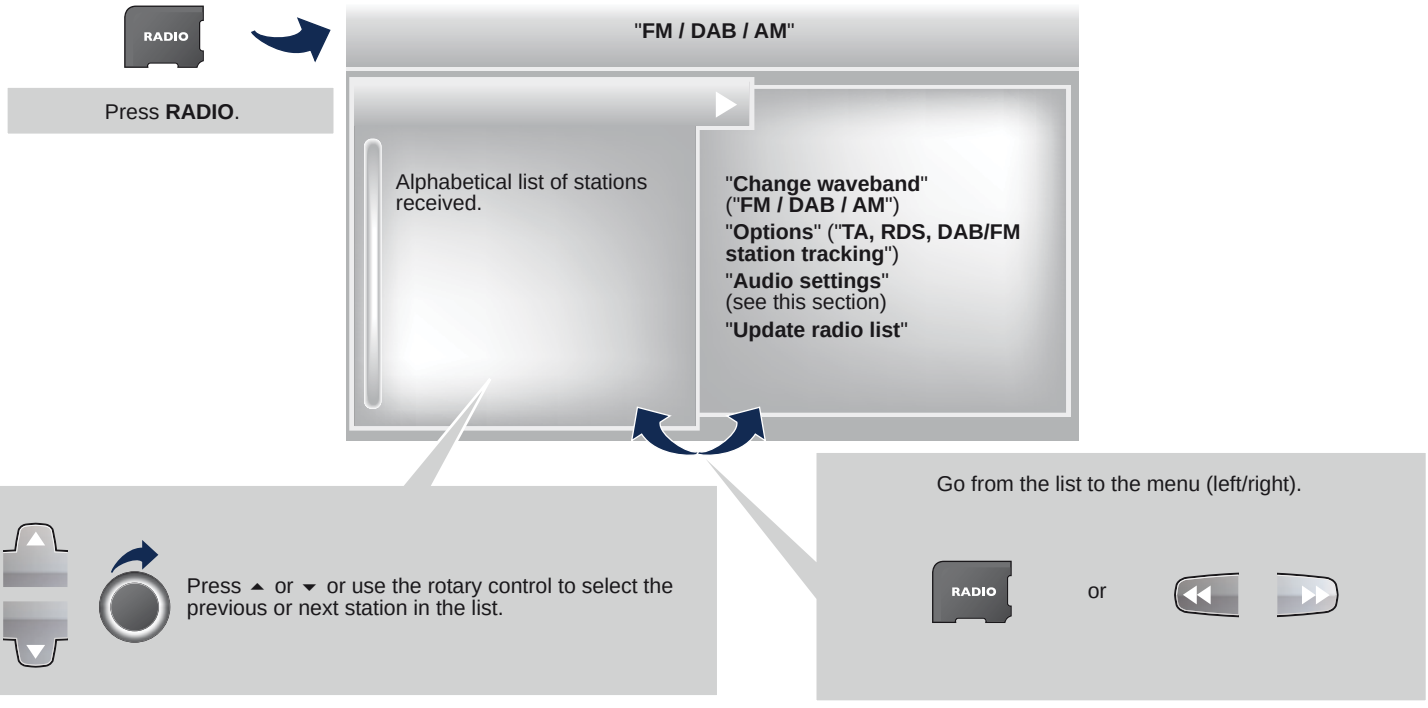
5 

Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the changes.



07 RADIO

Access to the "RADIO" menu



07 RADIO

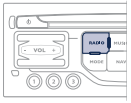
Changing waveband

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a fault with the audio system.

1



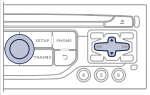
Press **RADIO** or **OK** to display the contextual menu.



2



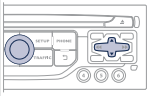
Select "**Change waveband**".



3



Select "**FM / DAB / AM**" and confirm.



Selecting a station



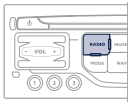
The quality of reception is represented by the number of active waves in this symbol.

1a



By alphabetical list

Press **RADIO**, select the station of your choice and confirm.



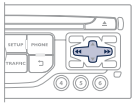
1b



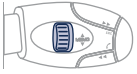
By automatic frequency search

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher radio frequency.

Or turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.





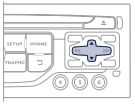


1c



By manual frequency search

Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust the radio frequency step by step.



07 RADIO

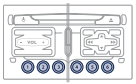
Presetting a station

1



After selecting a station, press one of the buttons on the numerical keypad for 2 seconds to preset the current station.

An audible signal confirms that the station has been preset.





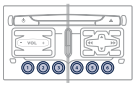
2

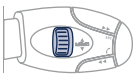


Press the button on the numerical keypad to recall a preset station.

Or press then turn the thumb wheel at the steering mounted controls.







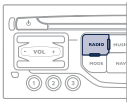
Activate / Deactivate RDS

! RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

1



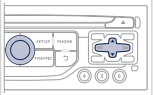
Press **RADIO**.



2



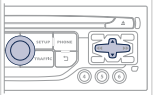
Select "**Guidance options**" then confirm.



3



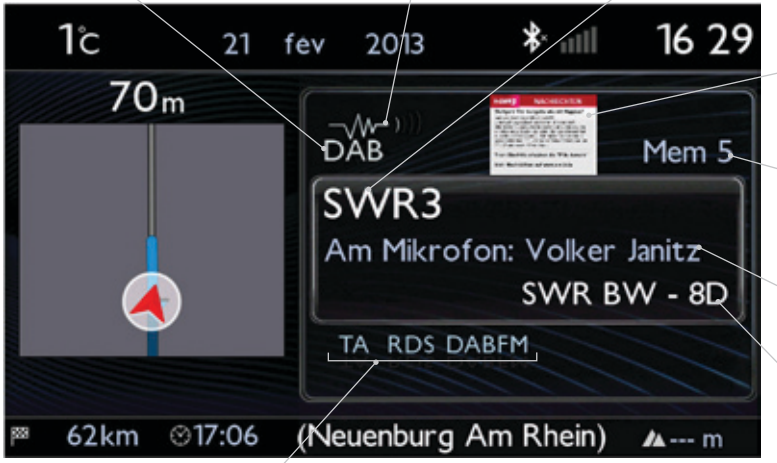
Activate or deactivate "**RDS**" then confirm.



Display of the "DAB" or "DAB (FM)" band.

Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

Display of the name of the current station.



Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

The "Video mode" allows the display to be enlarged.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6

Short press: select the preset radio station.

Long press: preset a radio station.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Display the name and number of the multiplex service being used.

Display of options:

if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,

if active and available, the display will be empty.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio

Digital radio provides a higher quality reception and also the graphical display of information for the radio station, by selecting "Video mode" in "Radio favourites" (Options).

The different radio multiplex services offer a choice of stations displayed in alphabetical order.

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Change band**" and confirm.

3 
Selection "**DAB**" and confirm.


Change of station in the same "multiplex".


Manual search for a "multiplex".

Digital radio - DAB/FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if one exists).

1 

Press "**RADIO**".

2 
Select "**Options**" and confirm.

3 
Select "**FM/DAB**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio with sometimes a variation in volume.

Display of the "DAB" band then becomes "DAB (FM)".

When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

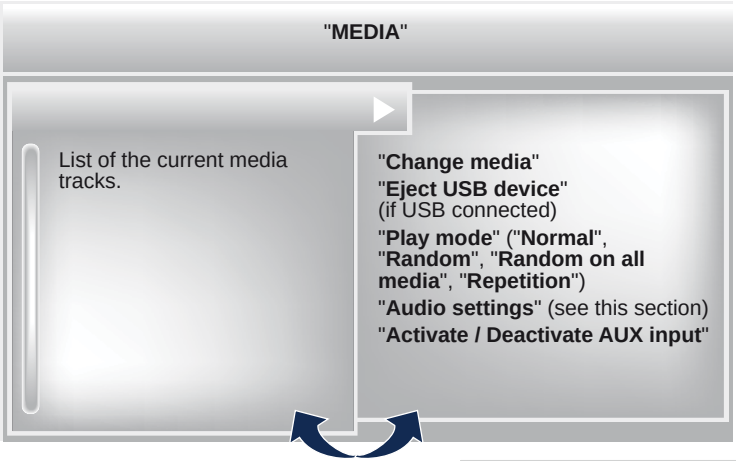
If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Access to the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYER" menu



Press **MUSIC**.



Go from the list to the menu (left/right).



or



08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3 CD / USB player

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are greater than 32 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format (udf, ...), it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The system supports USB mass storage or iPod devices via the USB port (suitable cable not supplied).

If a partitioned USB memory key is connected to the system, only the first partition is recognised.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.

The number of tracks is limited to 2000 maximum, 999 tracks per folder.

If the current consumption at the USB port exceeds 500 mA, the system goes into protection mode and deactivates the port.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).





In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted FAT 16 or 32.

The system does not support the operation of an Apple® player and a USB memory stick connected at the same time.

It is recommended that official Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Sources

Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

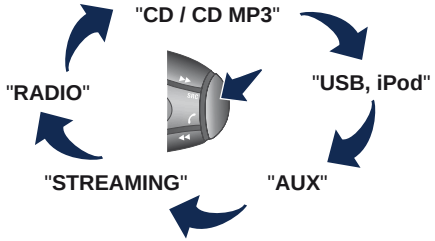


The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

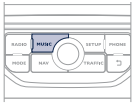
Selection of source

The **SOURCE** button on the steering mounted controls allows a direct change to the next media source.



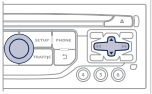
1 

Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MEDIA**" menu.



2 

Select "**Following media source**" and confirm.

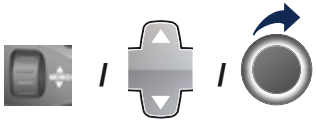


Repeat the operation as many times as necessary to obtain the desired media source (except for radio which is accessible either with **SOURCE** or **RADIO**).

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Selecting a track

Previous track.	
Next track.	
Previous folder.	
Next folder.	
Fast forward.	Long press 
Fast backward.	Long press 
Pause: long press on **SRC**.	

MUSIC: List of USB or CD tracks or folders	
Up or down in the list.	
Confirm, next menu level.	
Up one menu level.	 

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Connecting APPLE® players

1 Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

2 Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.
The "Shuffle tracks" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random" mode on the audio system.
The "Shuffle albums" mode on an iPod® corresponds to the "Random all" on the audio system.
"Shuffle tracks" is restored by default on each connection.

i The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1 Connect the telephone: see "**USING THE TELEPHONE**".
Select "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

2 If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

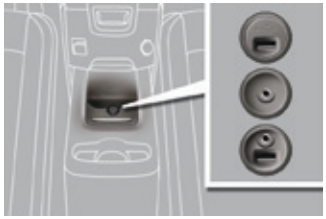
! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

08 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)
JACK/USB audio cable not supplied

1

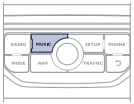
Connect the portable device (MP3, WMA player…) to the JACK auxiliary audio socket or USB port using a suitable cable.



2



Press **MUSIC** to display the "**MUSIC**" menu.

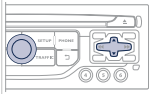


3



Select "**Activate / Deactivate AUX input**" and confirm.

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



!

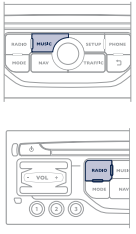
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

09 AUDIO SETTINGS

1



They are accessible by the **MUSIC** button in the control panel or by a long press on **RADIO** according to the source in use.



2

- "**Equalizer**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**")
- "**Le-Ri balance**" (Left/Right)
- "**Fr-Re balance**" (Front/Rear)
- "**Auto. Volume**" depending on road speed (Activate/Deactivate)

!

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.

!

The audio settings (**Equalizer**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.

The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.

i

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging.

With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3…) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys© software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, ...) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

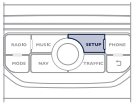
10 CONFIGURATION

Display configuration

1



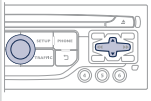
Press **SETUP** to display the "**Configuration**" menu.



2



Select "**Display configuration**" and confirm.

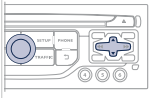


3a



Select "**Choose colour**" and confirm to select the screen colour harmony and the map presentation mode:

- day mode,
- night mode,
- automatic day/night mode, according to whether the headlamps are on.



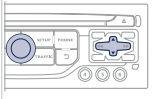
3b



Select "**Adjust luminosity**" and confirm to adjust the screen brightness.

Press "**OK**" to save the changes.

The settings for day and night are independent.



11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

"Navigation - guidance" MENU

- 1 **Select destination**
  - 2 **Enter an address**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **GPS coordinates**
- 1 **Journey leg and route**
  - 2 **Add a stage**
    - 3 Enter an address
    - 3 Directory
    - 3 Previous destinations
  - 2 **Order/delete journey legs**
  - 2 **Divert route**
  - 2 **Chosen destination**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 **Define calculation criteria**
    - 3 Fastest route
    - 3 Shortest route
    - 3 Distance/Time
    - 3 With tolls
    - 3 With Ferry
    - 3 Traffic info
  - 2 **Set speech synthesis**
  - 2 **Delete last destinations**
  - 2 **Set parameters for risk areas**
- 1 **Map management**
  - 2 **Map orientation**
    - 3 Vehicle direction
    - 3 North direction
    - 3 Perspective view
  - 2 **Map details**
  - 2 **Move the map**
  - 2 **Mapping and updating**
  - 2 **Description of risk areas database**
- 1 **Stop / Restore guidance**
  - 2 **Fastest route**
  - 2 **Shortest route**
  - 2 **Distance/Time**
  - 2 **With tolls**
  - 2 **With Ferry**
  - 2 **Traffic info**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"TRAFFIC INFORMATION" MENU

- 1 **Geographic filter**
  - 2 **Retain all the messages:**
  - 2 **Retain the messages:**
    - 3 Around the vehicle
    - 3 On the route
- 1 **Select TMC station**
  - 2 **Automatic TMC**
  - 2 **Manual TMC**
  - 2 **List of TMC stations**
- 1 **Display / Do not display messages**

"TELEPHONE" MENU

- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **Directory of contacts**
  - 2 **Call**
  - 2 **Open**
  - 2 **Import**
  - 2 **Search**
  - 2 **Delete**
  - 2 **Cancel**
- 1 **Contacts management**
  - 2 **New contact**
  - 2 **Sort by First name/Name**
  - 2 **Delete all contacts**
  - 2 **Import all the entries**
  - 2 **Synchronization options**
    - 3 No synchronization
    - 3 Display telephone contacts
    - 3 Display SIM card contacts
    - 3 Display all phone contacts
  - 2 **Contact mem. status**
- 1 **Phone functions**
  - 2 **Ring options**
  - 2 **Delete calls log**
- 1 **Bluetooth functions**
  - 2 **List of the paired peripherals**
    - 3 Connect
    - 3 Disconnect
    - 3 Delete
    - 3 Delete all
    - 3 Cancel
  - 2 **Peripherals search**
  - 2 **Rename radiotelephone**
- 1 **Hang up**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"RADIO" MENU

- 1 **Change Waveband**
  - 2 **FM**
  - 2 **DAB**
  - 2 **AM**
- 1 **Guidance options**
  - 2 **RDS options**
  - 2 **FM/DAB**
- 1 **Audio settings**
  - 2 **Equalizer**
    - 3 None
    - 3 Classical
    - 3 Jazz
    - 3 Rock
    - 3 Techno
    - 3 Vocal
  - 2 **Bass**
  - 2 **Treble**
  - 2 **Loudness**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
  - 2 **Distribution**
    - 3 Driver
    - 3 All passengers
  - 2 **Le-Ri balance**
  - 2 **Fr-Re balance**
  - 2 **Auto. Volume**
    - 3 Activated / Deactivated
- 1 **Update radio list**

"MUSIC" MENU

- 1 **Change Media**
  - 2 **CD**
  - 2 **Bluetooth streaming**
  - 2 **USB/iPod**
  - 2 **AUX**
- 1 **Read mode**
  - 2 **Normal**
  - 2 **Random**
  - 2 **Random on all media**
  - 2 **Repetition**
- 1 **Audio settings**
- 1 **Activate / Deactivate AUX input**

11 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

"SETUP" MENU

- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Choose colour**
    - 3 Harmony:
    - 3 Cartography:
      - 4 Day mode
      - 4 Night mode
      - 4 Auto Day/Night
  - 2 **Adjust luminosity**
  - 2 **Set date and time**
  - 2 **Select units**
- 1 **Speech synthesis setting**
  - 2 **Guidance instructions volume**
  - 2 **Select male voice/Select female voice**

- 1 **Select language**
  - 2 **Français**
  - 2 **English**
  - 2 **Italiano**
  - 2 **Portuguese**
  - 2 **Español**
  - 2 **Deutsch**
  - 2 **Nederlands**
  - 2 **Turkçe**
  - 2 **Polski**
  - 2 **Русский**
  - 2 **Cestina**
  - 2 **Hrvatski**
  - 2 **Magyar**

- 1 **Define vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Trip computer**
  - 2 **Alert log**
  - 2 **Status of functions**

* The settings vary according to the vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".
I am unable to enter my post code.	The system only accepts post codes of up to 7 characters.	
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.
I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.peugeot.co.uk (services)
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the information and advice in the "MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).	
The name of the radio station changes.	The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).

400
400
500
400
400
500



PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5)

AUDIO SYSTEM / BLUETOOTH®

Your PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio equipment may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

01	First steps	p.	376
02	Steering mounted controls	p.	377
03	Main menu	p.	378
04	Audio	p.	379
05	PEUGEOT Connect USB	p.	382
06	Bluetooth	p.	385
07	Screen menu map(s)	p.	388
	Frequently asked questions	p.	393

01 FIRST STEPS

Select source:
radio, audio CD / MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming, AUX.

Selection of AM / FM wavebands.

Audio settings: front/ rear fader, left/right balance, bass/treble, loudness, audio ambiences.

Display the list of local stations.
Long press: CD tracks or MP3 folders (CD / USB).

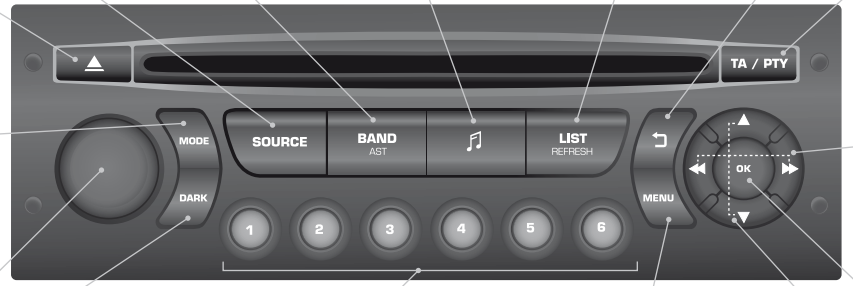
Abandon the current operation.

TA (Traffic Announcements) on/off.
Long press: PTY* (radio Programme TYpe) mode.

Eject CD.

Select the screen display mode:
Date, audio functions, trip computer, telephone.

On/off, volume setting.



Automatic frequency search down/up.
Select previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

Confirm.

The DARK button changes the screen display for improved driving comfort at night.
1st press: upper bar only illuminated.
2nd press: black screen.
3rd press: return to standard display.

Buttons 1 to 6:
Select a pre-set radio station.
Long press: pre-set a station.

Display main menu.

Select next frequency down/up.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Select previous/next folder / genre / artist / playlist (USB).

* Available according to version.

02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

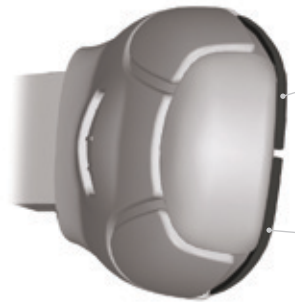
Radio: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the next track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.
Move in the list.

Change audio source.
Confirm a selection.
Call/end call on the telephone.
Press for more than 2 seconds: telephone main menu.



Radio: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD / MP3 / USB: selection of the previous track.
CD / USB: continuous press: fast reverse.
Move in the list.

Radio: select the previous/next pre-set station.
USB: select genre / artist / folder from the classification list.
Select the previous/next item in a menu.



Volume increase.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

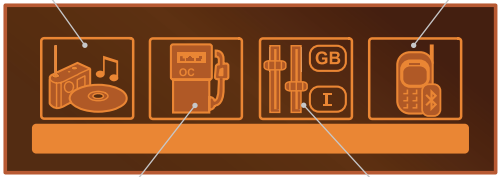
Volume decrease.

03 MAIN MENU

Screen C

AUDIO FUNCTIONS:
radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE:
Bluetooth hands-free, pairing, management of a call.



TRIP COMPUTER: entering of distances, alerts, status of functions.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:
vehicle parameters, display, languages.

Screen A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

04 AUDIO

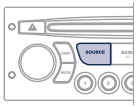
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

Radio

Selecting a station

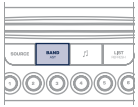
1 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



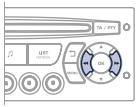
2 

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



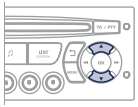
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

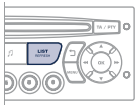






Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).

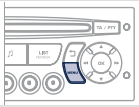
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

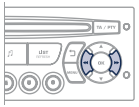
1 

Press the MENU button.



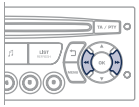
2 

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



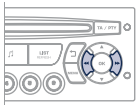
3 

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4 

Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.





In radio mode, press OK directly to activate / deactivate RDS mode.

!

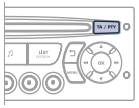
The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. Under conditions of very weak reception, the system may change to a regional station.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 

Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



CD
Playing a CD

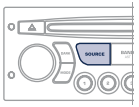
Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the vehicle's player.

Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

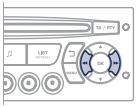
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

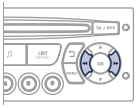
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or fast backwards.



MP3 CD
Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

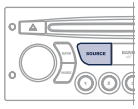
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1 

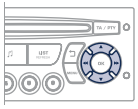
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

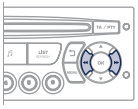
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



MP3 CD
Information and advice

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.

The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Using the PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from a portable device - digital player or a USB memory stick - to your PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) and heard via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or Apple® player of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the Apple® player lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is also possible by means of the steering mounted controls.



3

Other Apple® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



Connecting a USB memory stick

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats supported are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only) and .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression).

Certain playlist formats are supported (.m3u, ...)

On reconnection of the previous memory stick used, play is resumed automatically with the last track played.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device.

The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Using the PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

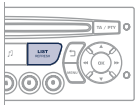
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.

Select by Folder / Artist / Genre / Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



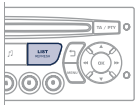




Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.

Navigate through the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

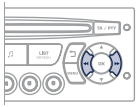


3



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next track on the classification list currently being played.

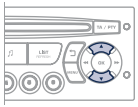
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous / next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



Connecting an Apple® player via the USB port

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined in the Apple® player).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 4 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB connection device other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

Using the auxiliary input (AUX)

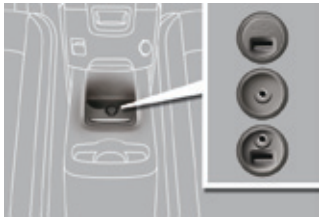
JACK socket or USB port (according to vehicle)

The auxiliary input, JACK or USB, allows the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).

Do not connect a device to both the JACK socket and the USB port at the same time.

1

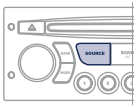
Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the JACK socket or to the USB port, using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



Adjusting the volume of the auxiliary source

1

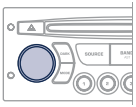
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



06 BLUETOOTH

Bluetooth telephone

Screen C
(Available according to model and version)

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.

Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

Pairing a telephone / First connection

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

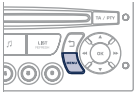
Go to www.peugeot.co.uk for more information (compatibility, more help, ...).

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



2 

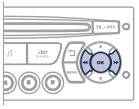
Press the MENU button.



3 

In the menu, select:

- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with a message that a search is in progress.

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed in the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.

Confirm by pressing OK.



8 A message is displayed in the screen of the telephone chosen. To accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm with OK.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9 A message that the pairing has been successful appears in the screen.

i The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.

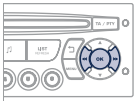
The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

Receiving a call

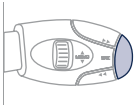
1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the vehicle's screen.

2 

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



Press this button to accept the call.



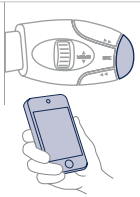
Making a call

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate with the thumb wheel.

Or

To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on compatibility, and while the Bluetooth connection with it is maintained.

! With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Ending a call

1

During a call, press this button for more than 2 seconds.
Confirm with OK to end the call.



Bluetooth audio streaming*

Wireless transmission of music files on the telephone, played via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

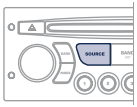
1 Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. Refer to the steps in "Pairing a telephone" on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



2 Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3 

Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button**.
The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls***.
The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.
** In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
*** If the telephone supports the function.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen A

MAIN FUNCTION

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

1 Radio-CD

- 2 **RDS options**
- 2 **REG mode**
- 2 **CD repeat**
- 2 **Shuffle play**

1 Vehicle config*

- 2 **R wiper in rev**
- 2 **Guide lighting**

* The settings vary according to vehicle.

1 Options

- 2 **Diagnostic**
  - 3 View
  - 3 Abandon

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Units

- Temperature: °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- Fuel consumption: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

Display adjust

- Year
- Month
- Day
- Hour
- Minutes
- 12 H/24 H mode

Language

- Français
- Italiano
- Nederlands
- Português
- Português-Brazil
- Deutsch
- English
- Español
- Cestina
- Hrvatski
- Magyar

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)



Screen C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



RADIO

1 activate / deactivate RDS

1 activate / deactivate REG mode

1 activate / deactivate radiotext

CD / MP3 CD

1 activate / deactivate Intro

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

1 activate / deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

USB

1 activate / deactivate track repeat (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

1 activate / deactivate random play (of the current folder / artist / genre / playlist)

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

Screen C

Pressing the MENU button displays:

Audio functions

- **FM preferences**
  - Alternative frequencies (RDS)
    - activate / deactivate
  - Regional mode (REG)
    - activate / deactivate
  - Radio-text information (RDTXT)
    - activate / deactivate
- **Play modes**
  - Album repeat (RPT)
    - activate / deactivate
  - Track random play (RDM)
    - activate / deactivate

Trip computer

- **Enter distance to destination**
  - Distance: x miles
- **Alert log**
  - Diagnostics
- **State of systems***
  - Systems activated or deactivated

* The settings vary according to vehicle.

07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

Personalisation-Configuration

- **Define vehicle settings***
- **Display configuration**
  - Video-brightness adjustment
    - normal video
    - inverse video
    - brightness (- +) adjustment
  - Setting the date and time
    - setting day/month/year
    - hour/minute adjustment
    - choice of 12 h / 24 h mode
  - Choice of units
    - l/100 km - mpg - km/l
    - °Celsius / °Fahrenheit
- **Choice of language**

Bluetooth telephone

- **Bluetooth configuration**
  - Connect/Disconnect an equipment
  - Telephone function
  - Audio Streaming function
    - Consult the paired equipment
    - Delete a paired equipment
    - Perform a Bluetooth search
- **Call**
  - Calls list
    - Directory
- **Manage the telephone call**
  - Terminate the current call
  - Activate secret mode

* The settings vary according to vehicle.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

Accessories 258
Accessory socket, 12V 103, 106, 117
Accessory socket, 12 volt 112, 113
Access to the 3rd row 79
AdBlue® 207
Additive, AdBlue 24, 207
Adjusting headlamps 93
Adjusting head restraints 73, 76
Adjusting seat belt height 143
Adjusting the steering wheel 85
Airbags 27, 147
Airbags, curtain 149, 150
Airbags, front 147, 150
Airbags, lateral 149, 150
Air conditioning 12
Air conditioning, automatic 64, 68
Air conditioning, manual 64, 65
Air filter 205
Air flow 12
Air vents 63
Alarm 54
Anti-pinch 56, 110
Anti-theft 151
Armrest, rear 113
Assistance call 271, 272
Audible warning 139
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 360, 387
Audio systems 44
Audio/video sockets 302
Automatic illumination of headlamps 87, 92
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 139
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 95, 98
Auxiliary socket 361, 384
Auxiliary sockets 302, 382

B

Backup starting 247
Battery 205, 246-248
Battery, charging 248
Battery, remote control 52, 53
Blind for panoramic sunroof 110
Blinds 118
Blue HDi 198, 207
Bluetooth (hands-free) 303-305, 342, 385
Bluetooth (telephone) 303-305, 342
Bonnet 199
Bonnet stay 199
Boot 61
Boot lamp 102, 118
Brake discs 206
Brake lamps 236
Brake pads 206
Brakes 206

C

Capacity, fuel tank 194
CD MP3 381
Central locking 50, 59
Centre console 105
Changing a bulb 233, 236-238
Changing a fuse 239
Changing a wheel 215, 226
Changing a wiper blade 99, 250
Changing the date 33, 35, 37, 41
Changing the remote control battery 52
Changing the time 33, 35, 37, 41
Checking levels 202-204
Checking the engine oil level 31
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 217
Checks 200, 201, 205, 206
Child lock 138
Children 127, 132, 133
Child seats 119, 120, 124, 137
Child seats, conventional 126, 127
Closing the boot 50, 61
Closing the doors 50, 58
Cold climate screen 257
Colour screen 40
Colour screen, retractable 42, 44
Concertina boards 80, 112, 113
Connectors, audio 104, 105, 382, 384
Control for panoramic sunroof blind 110
Coolant level 28, 204
Coolant temperature indicator 28
Courtesy lamps 100
Courtesy mirror 104
Cruise control 169
Cup holder 103, 112, 113

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) 354, 355
Date (setting) 33, 35, 37, 41
Deactivating ESP 142
Deactivating the passenger airbag 147
Deadlocking 50
Defrosting 65, 67, 83
Demisting 65
Dials and gauges 14
Diesel additive level 204
Dimensions 268
Dipped beam 86, 233-235
Dipstick 31, 202

Directional lighting 94
Direction indicators 139, 233, 234, 236
Distance alert 163
Doors 58
Doors emergency control 60
Door trays 103
Dynamic emergency braking 157
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 23, 141, 157

E

Eco-driving 12
Eco-driving (advice) 12
Economical driving 12
Economy mode 249
Electric window controls 56
Electronic engine immobiliser 53, 151
Electronic gearbox system 12, 14, 19, 154, 157, 158, 173, 183, 206, 248
Electronic stability control (ESC) 140
Emergency boot release 62
Emergency call 271-273
Emergency warning lamps 139
Energy economy mode 249
Engine compartment 200, 201
Engine compartment fusebox 239
Engine, Diesel 196, 198, 201, 262, 264, 267
Engine oil 202
Engine oil level indicator 31, 202
Engine, petrol 196, 200, 260, 261
Engines 260, 262
Environment 12, 53
Equipment settings 15, 33, 35, 37, 40-42, 390
ESC/ASR 140

F

Filling with fuel 194, 196, 197
Fitting a wheel 229
Fitting roof bars 256
Fittings, boot 112, 113
Flashing indicators 139
Foglamps, rear 88
Folding the rear seats 77, 79, 80
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 83
Front foglamps 88, 233, 235
Front seats 71, 72, 75
Fuel 12, 194, 196
Fuel consumption 12
Fuel filler cap 194
Fuel filler flap 194, 197
Fuel gauge 194
Fuel tank 194, 197
Fusebox, dashboard 239
Fuses 239

G

Gearbox, automatic 12, 14, 19, 154, 157, 158, 178, 206, 248
Gearbox, electronic gear control 206
Gearbox, manual 12, 154, 157, 158, 172, 183, 206
Gear lever 12
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 178
Gear lever, manual gearbox 172
Gear shift indicator 182
Glove box 103, 104
G.P.S. 286, 328
Grab handles 103
Guidance 286, 326, 333
Guide-me-home 92

H

Halogen headlamps 233, 234
Hands-free kit 342, 385
Hazard warning lamps 139
Headlamp adjustment 93
Headlamps, directional 94, 233
Headlamp wash 97
Headlamp wash reservoir 204
Head restraints, front 73
Head restraints, rear 76
Head-up display 161, 166, 169
Heated seats 74
Heating 12, 64, 65
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel 85
High load retaining net 115
Hill start assist 158
Hooks 113, 117
Horn 139

I

Identification plates....269
Ignition....153
Indicator lamps, status....18
Indicators, direction....139
Inflating accessories (using the kit)....217
Inflating tyres....12
Inputs for audio system....302, 361, 382, 384
Instrument panel lighting....32
Instrument panels....14, 15
Instrument panel screen....14, 182
Intelligent Traction Control....140
Interior fittings....103
Interior mood lighting....101
ISOFIX....132
ISOFIX child seats....131-133
ISOFIX mountings....131

J

Jack....215, 226
JACK socket....105, 361, 382, 384
Jukebox (copy)....300
Jukebox (playing)....301

K

Keeping children safe....119, 120, 124, 132, 133, 137, 147
Key in ignition warning....153
Key with remote control....49, 50, 53, 151

L

Labels, identification....269
Lamps, warning and indicator....17, 20
LED daytime running lamps....90, 233, 234
LEDs - light-emitting diodes....233, 234
Level, AdBlue® additive....207
Level, brake fluid....203
Level, headlamp wash....97, 204
Level, power steering fluid....203
Levels and checks....200-204
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs....233, 234
Lighting....102
Lighting bulbs (replacement)....233, 236-238
Lighting control stalk....86
Lighting dimmer....32
Lighting, guide-me home....90, 92
Lighting, interior....100, 101
Loading....12, 82, 256
Load reduction mode....249
Load space cover....112-114
Locating your vehicle....51
Locking from the inside....59
Long objects, transporting....75, 82
Luggage retaining net....116

M

Main beam....86, 233-235
Maintenance....12
Map reading lamps....100
Markings, identification....269
Mat....106
Menu, main....378
Mini fuel level....194
Mirror, rear view....84
Mirrors, door....83
Misfuel prevention....197
Modularity, seats....82
Motorway function (direction indicators)....139
Mountings for ISOFIX seats....131
MP3 CD....381
Multimedia, rear....105, 108
Music media players....298, 356

N

Navigation....286, 325, 326
Net....114
Number plate lamps....237, 238

O

Oil change....202
Oil consumption....202
Oil filter....205
Oil level....31, 202
Opening the bonnet....199
Opening the boot....49, 61
Opening the doors....49, 58
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind....110
Opening the retractable screen....44
Operation indicator lamps....17-20

P

Paint colour code 269
Panoramic glass sunroof 110
Parking brake 206
Parking brake, electric 22, 154, 157
Parking sensors, audible and visual 188
Parking sensors, front 188
Parking sensors, rear 188
Parking space sensor 191
Particle emission filter 199, 204, 205
Passenger compartment filter 205
PEUGEOT call button 273
PEUGEOT Connect Assistance 272, 273
PEUGEOT Connect Media Navigation (NG4 3D) 275, 278, 281, 308
PEUGEOT Connect Navigation (RT6) 40, 42, 319
PEUGEOT Connect SOS 272, 273
PEUGEOT CONNECT SOS 273
PEUGEOT Connect Sound (RD5) 37, 375, 388, 390
PEUGEOT services 273
PIN code 306
Player, CD MP3 381
POIs (updating) 293
Port, USB 105, 361, 382, 384
Priming the fuel system 198
Protecting children 119, 120, 124, 127, 132, 133, 137, 147
Puncture 217, 223

R

Radio 297, 351, 352, 379
RCA sockets 302
Reading lamps, rear 100
Rear foglamp 236, 237
Rear screen (demisting) 67, 83
Recharging the battery 248
Reduction of electrical load 249
Regeneration of the particle emissions filter 205
Reinitialising the electric windows 56
Reinitialising the remote control 52
Remote control 49, 50, 53
Removable screen (snow shield) 257
Removing a wheel 229
Removing the mat 106
Repair kit, puncture 217, 223
Replacing bulbs 233, 236-238
Replacing fuses 239
Replacing the air filter 205
Replacing the oil filter 205
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 205
Replacing wiper blades 99, 250
Resetting the service indicator 30
Resetting the trip recorder 32
Rev counter 14
Reversing camera 190
Reversing lamp 236
Rigid panel 79
Risk areas (update) 293, 330
Roof bars 256
Routine checks 205, 206
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 198

S

Safety for children 56, 127, 138
Satellite navigation system 40
Screen, colour 16/9 ....281, 308
Screen, colour and mapping 41, 323, 364
Screen menu map 308, 364, 388, 390
Screen, monochrome 378, 388, 390
Screen, monochrome C 46
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment) 35, 37, 40, 42, 44
Screen, multifunction (without audio equipment) 33
Screenwash fluid level 97, 204
Screenwash, front 97
Screen-wash reservoir 204
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 207
SCR system 207
Seat adjustment 71, 72, 77
Seat belts 113, 143, 145, 146
Seat configurations 82
Seats, electric 72
Seats, rear 77, 79, 80
Serial number, vehicle 269
Service indicator 29
Service warning light 21
Servicing 12
Setting the clock 33, 35, 37, 41
Short-cut menus 282, 324
Sidelamps 86, 233, 234, 236
Side repeater 235
SIM card 104, 306
Snow chains 232
Spare wheel 215, 226, 230
Speed limiter 166
Speedometer 14
Spotlamps, side 101
Start 247

Starting the engine 151
Starting the vehicle 151, 173, 178
Steering mounted controls, audio 280, 377
Stopping the vehicle 151, 173, 178
Stop & Start 48, 66, 70, 183, 195, 199, 205, 246
Storage 103, 105, 107, 112, 113
Storage box 104
Storage drawer 107
Storage wells 112, 113
Stowing rings 112, 113
Sun visor 103, 104, 118
Switching off the engine 151
Synchronising the remote control 52
Synthesiser, voice 336
System, navigation 286, 326

T

Table of weights 261, 264, 267
Tables, aircraft 107
Tables of engines 260, 262
Tables of fuses 239
Tank, AdBlue® additive 207, 212
Tank, fuel 197
Technical data 260-262, 264, 267
Telephone 273, 303-305, 342, 346
Telephone, hands-free 303-305
Temperature control for heated seats 74
Temperature, coolant 28
Temporary tyre repair kit 217
Third brake lamp 237, 238
TMC (Traffic info) 295, 339
Tools 215, 226
Torch 102, 112, 113, 118
Total distance recorder 32
Towbar 254
Towed loads 261, 264, 267
Towing another vehicle 250, 251
Traction control (ASR) 23
Traffic information (TA) 296, 340, 353, 380
Traffic information (TMC) 295, 296, 339, 340
Trailer 254
Trip computer 45, 46, 48
Trip distance recorder 32
Tyre pressures 269
Tyres 12
Tyre under-inflation detection 186, 230

U

Under floor storage 117
Under-inflation (detection) 186
Unlocking 49
Unlocking from the inside 59
Update risk areas 293, 330
Updating POIs 293
UREA 207, 208
USB (PEUGEOT Connect) 105, 382

V

Vehicle configuration 15, 33, 35, 37, 40-42, 390
Vehicle identification 269
Ventilation 63-65
Voice commands 278

W

Warning lamps 18, 20, 22
Washing (advice) 190
Wash-wipe, rear 96
Weights 261, 264, 267
Welcome lighting 91, 101
Window controls 56
Wiper control stalk 95, 96, 98
Wiper, rear 96
Wipers 95, 98

X

Xenon headlamps 233

! Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

04-14

4Dconcept diadeis ENTAGOS

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 172 711 770 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z

